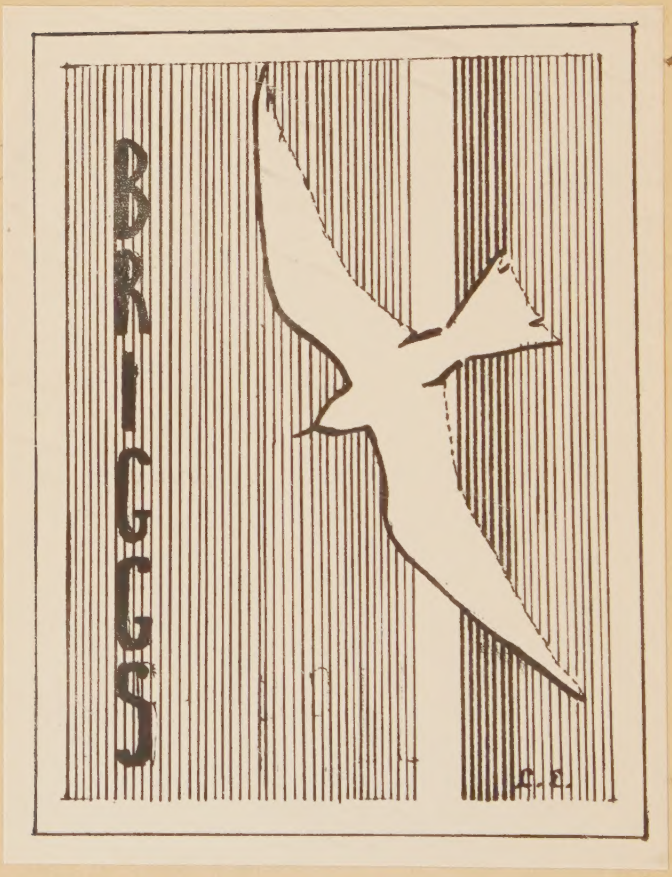
BRIEF SPANISH GRAMMAR

INGRAHAM–EDGREN


BRIGGS

94-amer.
94

1.33

Ir } verbs of motion
venir }
aprender
enseñar a + inf.
empezar
comenzar

Marion Richards
W. H. S.

Marion Richards

Wyoming
Seminary.
Sept. 1919. Luzerne, Pa.

Grammar Tuesday
Thursday

Reader. Monday
Wednesday.
Friday

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/briefspanishgram0000esin

Heath's Modern Language Series

A BRIEF
SPANISH GRAMMAR

BASED ON

"A BRIEF SPANISH GRAMMAR"

BY A. HJALMAR EDGREN
LATE PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES, UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA

BY

E. S. INGRAHAM
PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES
OHIO STATE UNIVERSITY

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1913,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

1 E 7

PREFACE

This book is a very free revision of the *Brief Spanish Grammar* of the late Professor Edgren, so long the leading text book in this country for beginners in Spanish. Conditions have changed greatly since that book was published. The language is now taken up at an earlier age, and, in the case of a large number of students, with a view to some practical use. Moreover, these students are, in increasing numbers, unfamiliar with any but modern languages. It seemed, therefore, desirable to meet the changed conditions by a presentation of the facts of the language more in accord with present needs. The reviser has sought, however, while extending the work sufficiently to explain the phenomena of the language even to those whose linguistic training has been limited, to confine himself to the essentials and to retain in a large measure the brevity of the original work.

The chapter on versification, as well as all purely philological matter, has been eliminated, and in place of the two parts of Dr. Edgren's work, this book has but one. The syntax has been extended to cover the main points which the student will meet in reading modern Spanish. In remaking the exercises, the aim has been to illustrate fully the principles explained in the lessons, and to offer a practical vocabulary which would be useful in everyday life. Enough oral exercises have been introduced to indicate a line of work that may be extended to suit the time and purpose of individual teachers. The vocabulary is purposely restricted, with a view to securing a reasonable familiarity with a comparatively small number of words, and also with the idea that students can more readily focus their

efforts on the application of new principles, if they are dealing with a small number of new words. In treating the verb, the tenses of the regular verbs are presented by easy stages, and considerable opportunity is afforded for drill on them before passing to those of regularly recurring irregularities, and thence to the unclassified irregular verbs. In order to keep this important feature constantly in the mind of the student, a lesson on verbs generally alternates, throughout the book, with a lesson on other forms or on syntax. In the treatment of the verbs, as on all other points, less common irregularities are omitted to make space for those that the student will meet frequently.

The facts of language are best learned by observation in reading. In order to make early reading possible, the aim has been to present in the first fifteen lessons all that the student must know before taking up some of the elementary readers or texts that give in their notes and vocabularies all irregular verb forms and other requisite information. From this point in this book the study of the grammar and reading may be pursued simultaneously, and each line of work made to throw light upon the other.

The writer wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to his predecessors in the field, from whom he has taken freely ideas as to the method of presenting the material. He is under especial obligations to Professor B. L. Bowen, of this university, without whose kindly encouragement this book would probably never have been published, and to Professor T. E. Hamilton, who has assisted in the ungrateful task of reading proof.

EDGAR S. INGRAHAM

COLUMBUS, OHIO.
February, 1913.

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION

Alphabet vii
Pronunciation . . . . . .
Simple Vowels vii
Vowel Compounds viii
Consonants ix
Accent xi
Orthographical Changes xii
Phonetic Changes xiii
Capitals and Punctuation xiii
Syllabification xiv

LESSONS

I. Gender of Nouns. — Indefinite Article. — Present Tense of Regular Verbs. 1
II. Definite Article. — Plural of Nouns 4
III. Contraction of Definite Article. — Negation and Interrogation. 7
IV. Imperfect and Preterite Tense of Regular Verbs. . 9
V. Adjectives. — Gender and Number. 13
VI. Future and Conditional Tenses of Regular Verbs. . 16
VII. Adjectives. — Position and Agreement. 19
VIII. Present Subjunctive and Imperative of Regular Verbs. 23
IX. Adjectives. — Comparison. 26
X. Use of Articles. 31
XI. Imperfect, Conditional and Future Subjunctive of Regular Verbs 35
XII. Direct Object with **a**. — Neuter Article. 38
XIII. Personal Pronouns. 41
XIV. Personal Pronouns (continued) 46
XV. Review of Regular Verbs. 49
XVI. Regular Verbs with Orthographical Changes. . . 55
XVII. Negatives. 60
XVIII. **Irregular Verbs. — Ser and Estar.** 64

LESSONS		PAGE
XIX.	Irregular Verb. — **Haber.** — Perfect Tenses	69
XX.	Irregular Verbs. — **Tener** and **Hacer.**	74
XXI.	Reflexive Verbs.	79
XXII.	Passive Voice.	83
XXIII.	Possessives.	88
XXIV.	Stem-Varying Verbs. — **Pensar** Class.	92
XXV.	Demonstratives.	98
XXVI.	Stem-Varying Verbs. — **Sentir, Pedir** and **-uir** Classes	102
XXVII.	Relative Pronouns.	107
XXVIII.	Subjunctive Mood.	111
XXIX.	Subjunctive Mood (continued).	115
XXX.	Interrogatives.	119
XXXI.	Numerals.	122
XXXII.	Indefinites.	127
XXXIII.	Infinitive Mood.	133
XXXIV.	Gerund and Past Participle.	137
XXXV.	Irregular Verbs.	141
XXXVI.	Irregular Verbs (continued).	145
XXXVII.	Irregular Verbs (continued).	149
XXXVIII.	Irregular Verbs (continued).	153

APPENDIX. — Diminutives and Augmentatives. 157

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS. 159

SPANISH–ENGLISH VOCABULARY. 163

ENGLISH–SPANISH VOCABULARY. 178

INDEX 193

INTRODUCTION

Alphabet. — The Spanish alphabet consists of the following characters:

LETTER	NAME	LETTER	NAME
a	a	**m**	eme
b	be	**n**	ene
c	ce	**ñ**	eñe
ch	che	**o**	o
d	de	**p**	pe
e	e	**q**	cu
f	efe	**r**	ere
g	ge	**rr**	erre
h	ache	**s**	ese
i	i	**t**	te
j	jota	**u**	u
k	ka	**v**	ve
l	ele	**x**	equis
ll	elle	**y**	ye *or* y griega
		z	zeda *or* zeta

(*a*) The student will note that words beginning with **ch**, **ll**, or **ñ** will be found in dictionaries and vocabularies under separate captions after **c**, **l**, and **n**.

(*b*) **W** is found only in foreign words and is pronounced like Spanish **v**.

Pronunciation. — The pronunciation varies much in the different provinces of Spain. The Castilian form of Spanish is, however, the official one and its pronunciation is taken as the normal. The following explanations are intended to approximate as nearly as possible the pronunciation of Castilian.

Simple Vowels. — The simple vowels are all uttered with distinct enunciation. They must be pronounced purely; i.e.,

they must not be allowed to become diphthongs, as do most English vowels.

a like **a** in English 'ah':		**a**ma.* **a**la, pata, amamos.
e " **a** " " 'ate':		**m**e, t**e**, s**e**, m**e**nte.
i " **ee** " " 'eel':		ir**a**, m**i**ra, **í**ntimo.
o " **o** " " 'go':		**a**mo, m**o**ro, **o**ramos.
u " **oo** " " 'ooze':		c**u**ra, p**u**ro, m**u**rieron.
y as a vowel, like Spanish i:		r**ey**, s**oy**, est**oy**.

(*a*) The diphthongal pronunciation of English **u** must be avoided. Compare Spanish *futuro* and English 'future'.

(*b*) **Y** is a vowel when it stands alone, as in **y**, *and*, and at the end of a word. At the beginning of a syllable it is generally considered a consonant.

Vowel Compounds. — In vowel compounds each letter has its usual sound, but the unaccented member is somewhat slighted in favor of the accented letter. The vowel compounds are: —

(1) *Diphthongs*, which are combinations of the weak vowels (**i**, **u**, **y**), or of one of the strong vowels (**a**, **e**, **o**) with a weak vowel, forming one syllable:

treinta	baile	suntuoso	viuda	seria
ruido	causa	pie	Ceuta	serio

(2) *Triphthongs*, which are combinations of a strong vowel between two weak vowels forming one syllable:

guay	apreciáis	Paraguay	buey

(3) *Combinations* of two strong vowels or of a strong vowel (or diphthong) and an accented weak vowel forming two syllables:

dese-o	héro-e	ba-úl	temí-a
temí-ais	ra-íz	ma-estro	o-ído

* The accented vowels will be indicated by blackfaced type until the rules for accentuation have been given.

Consonants. — Many Spanish consonants have approximately the same sound as in English. In general, however, the consonants in Spanish are rather touched upon than pronounced distinctly. The following peculiarities are to be noticed:

b English *b* is made by a decided stoppage of the breath by the lips. In pronouncing Spanish **b** the lips merely touch one another with the very slightest contact. The resulting sound is something between English *b* and *v:*

bobo bebo buey amabais

(1) When pronounced forcibly after **m** or **n** and before **l** or **r**, Spanish **b** more nearly resembles English **b:**

imbécil pobre blanda

c has two sounds:

(1) Before **e** and **i** it has the sound of English *th* in 'thin':

cinta cima cena paciencia cera

(2) Before **a, o, u,** or a consonant it has the sound of **k:**

cara cosa cura creo

ch has the sound of English *ch* in 'church':

mucho macho muchacho chato chico

d In pronouncing Spanish **d** the tip of the tongue is placed against the upper teeth, instead of back of them as in English, and the breath is never wholly stopped. In sound it is almost the *th* of English 'then.' At the beginning of a word forcibly pronounced and after **l** or **n** it more nearly approximates the English *d*, while between vowels and at the end of words it is weakened to the sound of *th* in 'thin' or even lost entirely:

doy den admira
diablo maldad andando grande
Madrid usted mandado colorado

g has two sounds:

(1) Before **e** and **i**, **g** has the sound of a strongly aspirated English *h*. The sound is made by placing the tip of the tongue against the lower teeth and almost closing the air passage by arching the tongue so that the breath rasps slightly:

giro ginete general gente agente

(2) Before **a**, **o**, **u**, or a consonant **g** has the hard sound of *g* in English 'go':

gano golpe agua grande digno

NOTE. — **u** after **g** and before **e** or **i** is a mere diacritical mark to indicate that the **g** is hard, and is not pronounced:

guía guisar guerra pague

h is silent:

hablar honor hora huevo

j has always the sound that Spanish **g** has before **e** and **i**:

jamón mujer jilguero jota junta

ll has the sound of *lli* in English 'million':

calle calla pillo batalla llamar

ñ has the sound of *ni* in English 'onion':

niño paño piño compaña reñir

q is found only before **u**; **qu** has the sound of **k**:

que quinto quien química quemar

r is always trilled rather more than in English:

cárcel pensar aguardar

rr is a strong trill, made by the vibration of the tip of the tongue against the palate just back of the teeth:

perro guerra tierra pizarra bizarro

(1) When initial or after **l**, **n**, or **s** a single **r** has the value of **rr**, i.e., is strongly trilled:

rosa raíz alrota honra Israelita

s is always like the *s* in 'set', never like the *s* in 'rose':

es estar sabio osar mismo

v has the same pronounciation as Spanish **b**:

ave volver volar valor

x has the sound of *ks*. Before consonants it is often pronounced like *s*:

examen axioma extremo texto sexto

z has always the sound that Spanish **c** has before **e** and **i**:

zeta brazo juzgar zapato haz

Accent. — In Spanish words, as in English, one syllable receives greater voice stress than the others. In some cases the accent is written, in others it is not.

(1) Words ending in a vowel or a diphthong, or in the consonants **n** or **s**, are accented on the next to the last syllable and require no written accent:

ca-sa	ca-sas	de-se-o	pa-tria	or-den
a-mo	a-mas	a-ma-bais	pa-cien-cia	an-dan

(2) Words ending in a consonant other than **n** or **s** are accented on the last syllable and require no written accent:

ciu-dad	re-loj	a-mar	a-zul
e-rror	fe-liz	an-dad	mer-ced

(3) The accent must be written on words of more than one syllable not accented according to the above rules:

ár-bol	mú-si-ca	se-gún	ca-fé	cár-cel
ba-ta-llón	hé-ro-e	már-tir	pa-pá	jó-ve-nes

(4) The voice stress falls on the second of two weak vowels forming a diphthong, on the strong vowel of a vowel compound

consisting of a strong and a weak vowel, or on the strong vowel of a triphthong:

huir	reina	tierra	buey
viudo	viaje	jaula	fiais

(*a*) The accent is written in such cases only when the syllable containing the vowel compound bears the graphic accent in accordance with (3):

miércoles	parabién	veréis
estiércol	amáis	apreciáis

(*b*) If the accent falls on the first of two weak vowels or on the weak vowel of a vowel combination it must be indicated graphically. The combination is in this case not a diphthong or a triphthong:

día	baúl	flúido	sería
leído	raíz	acentúo	huíais

(5) In accordance with the changes in the rules for accent in the 1911 edition of the *Gramática castellana* of the Real Académia, no monosyllabics bear the written accent except the interrogative pronouns and adverbs; some preterites: **fuí, fué,** dió, etc.; the more emphatic of the homonyms: **dé** (verb), **de** (*of*), **él** (*he*), **el** (*the*), **mí** (*me*), **mi** (*my*), **más** (*more*), **mas** (*but*), **sí** (refl. pron.), **si** (*yes*), **si** (*if*), **sé** (*I know*), **se** (refl. pron.), **tú** (*thou*), **tu** (*thy*), etc.

Orthographical Changes. — It has been noted above that the pronunciation of **c** and **g** varies according as they are followed by **a, o, u,** or **e, i.** To preserve the sound of these letters, and at the same time conform to the rules for pronunciation, it is often necessary, before inflectional and derivative endings, to employ orthographical signs of equivalent sound value:

c before **a, o, u** is changed to **qu** before endings in **e** or **i:**

tocar	toque	rico	riquísimo

c before **e** or **i** is changed to **z** before endings in **a** or **o:**

vencer	venzo	venza

g before **a, o, u** is changed to **gu** before endings in **e** or **i**:
pago pagues vago vaguísimo

g before **e** or **i** is changed to **j** before endings in **a, o, u**:
coger cojo dirigir dirija

gu before **e** or **i** drops the **u** before endings in **a** or **o**:
distinguir distingo distinga

gu before **a** or **o** is written **gü** before **e** or **i**:
menguo mengüe averiguar averigüe

z is changed to **c** before endings in **e** or **i**:
alzar alcé voz voces

h is added before initial **ue**: oler, huelo.

i (diphthongal) is lost after **ll** and **ñ**: bulló, riñó; it changes to **y** between vowels, or when initial before a vowel: leyese, yerro.

Phonetic Changes. — **E** and **o** are often strengthened to **ie** and **ue** under the accent. Similarly the accented diphthongs are often weakened to **e** and **o** when the accent is displaced:

pensar	pienso	contar	cuento
cierto	certísimo	fuerte	fortísimo

Unaccented **e** and **o** are sometimes weakened to **i** and **u** respectively when not followed in the next syllable by accented **i**:
sentir sintiendo dormir durmiendo

Capitals and Punctuation. — Deviation from English usage:

(1) Adjectives derived from proper names are not capitalized except (optionally) when used as substantives:

inglés, *English*	americano, *American*
francés, *French*	europeo, *European*

But Un Inglés, *an Englishman* Un Francés, *a Frenchman*

(2) The names of the months and of the days of the week are usually not capitalized:

junio, *June* lunes, *Monday*

(3) **Yo** (*I*) is not capitalized except at the beginning of a sentence.

(4) The signs of interrogation and exclamation are written inverted before the sentence, as well as in the usual upright position at the end:

¿Qué quiere V.? *What do you want?*
¡Qué día tan hermoso! *What a beautiful day!*

Syllabification. — In dividing Spanish words into syllables (1) a single consonant, (2) the combinations **ch**, **ll**, and **rr**, and (3) most combinations of a consonant and **l** or **r** belong with the following vowel or diphthong:

e-dad, na-ción, e-char, ca-ba-llo, no-ble, pa-dre.

(*a*) rl and sl are, however, divided:

or-la, is-la, mus-lo.

Otherwise, of two consonants between vowels, one goes with the preceding, and one with the following vowel:

lec-ción, con-tar, mul-ti-tud, or-den.

But a prefix usually constitutes a separate syllable:

ab-so-lu-to, trans-fu-ga, abs-ti-nen-cia, ad-vien-to.

LESSON I

1. Gender of Nouns. — All Spanish nouns, whether names of animate or of inanimate objects, are grammatically either masculine or feminine. There are no neuter nouns.

lápiz, masc., *pencil.*	**pluma,** fem., *pen.*
pueblo, masc., *town.*	**ciudad,** fem., *city.*

(1) Nouns denoting male beings and nouns ending in **-o** are masculine.

Exception: **mano,** fem., *hand.*

(2) Nouns denoting female beings and nouns ending in **-a** are feminine.

Exceptions: **día,** masc., *day;* **mapa,** masc., *map;* and nouns of Greek origin ending in **-ta** and **-ma**: **patriota, poeta, drama, poema,** etc.

(3) The gender of other nouns is best learned by observation.

2. Indefinite Article. — The indefinite article in Spanish has the following forms:

	Masculine	Feminine
Sing.	**un**	**una**
Plur.	**unos**	**unas**
	un lápiz, *a pencil.*	**una pluma,** *a pen.*
	un pueblo, *a town.*	**una ciudad,** *a city.*

(*a*) The indefinite article is repeated before each noun to which it refers: **una casa y un jardín,** *a house and garden.*

(*b*) The feminine form **una** sometimes loses its final vowel before a noun beginning with accented **a** or **ha**: **un águila,** *an eagle.*

(*c*) The plural forms **unos** and **unas** are translated by *some*: **unas plumas,** *some pens.*

3. Conjugations. — The regular verbs in Spanish are divided into three classes according to the infinitive endings. Verbs ending in **–ar** are of the first conjugation, those in **–er** are of the second, and those in **–ir** are of the third.

4. The Present Tense. — The present tense of regular verbs is formed by adding to the present stem (the infinitive minus the ending) the endings, **–o, –as, –a, –amos, –áis, –an,** for the first conjugation; **–o, –es, –e, –emos, –éis, –en,** for the second conjugation; and **–o, –es, –e, –imos, –ís, –en,** for the third conjugation.

1. First Conjugation: **comprar,** *to buy.*

	Singular	
yo[1]	compr **o**	*I buy, am buying, do buy.*
tú[2]	compr **as**	*you buy,* etc.
usted[3]	compr **a**	*you buy,* etc.
él (ella)	compr **a**	*he* (*she*) *buys,* etc.
	Plural	
nosotros, –as	compr **amos**	*we* (m. and f.) *buy,* etc.
vosotros, –as[2]	compr **áis**	*you* (m. and f.) *buy,* etc.
ustedes	compr **an**	*you buy,* etc.
ellos (ellas)	compr **an**	*they* (m. and f.) *buy,* etc.

2. Second Conjugation: **comer,** *to eat.*

	Singular	
yo	com **o**	*I eat, am eating,* ***do eat.***
tú	com **es**	*you eat,* etc.
usted	com **e**	*you eat,* etc.
él (ella)	com **e**	*he* (*she*) *eats,* etc.
	Plural	
nosotros, –as	com **emos**	*we* (m. and f.) *eat,* etc.
vosotros, –as	com **éis**	*you* (m. and f.) *eat,* etc.
ustedes	com **en**	*you eat,* etc.
ellos (ellas)	com **en**	*they* (m. and f.) *eat,* etc.

3. Third Conjugation: **vivir**, *to live.*

Singular

yo	viv **o**	*I live, am living, do live.*
tú	viv **es**	*you live,* etc.
usted	viv **e**	*you live,* etc.
él (ella)	viv **e**	*he* (*she*) *lives,* etc.

Plural

nosotros, –as	viv **imos**	*we* (m. and f.) *live,* etc.
vosotros, –as	viv **ís**	*you* (m. and f.) *live,* etc.
ustedes	viv **en**	*you live,* etc.
ellos (ellas)	viv **en**	*they* (m. and f.) *live,* etc.

(1) The subject pronouns, except **usted** and **ustedes,** are usually omitted unless required for emphasis, clearness, or distinction.

(2) The forms of the second person singular and plural are given for the sake of completeness, but for the present the student will use only **usted** and **ustedes** in the exercises. Cf. § 46.

(3) **Usted** is often abbreviated to **V.** or **Vd.,** and **ustedes** to **VV.** or **Vds.**

EXERCISE I

(Words given in the text of the lessons will not be found in the special vocabularies, but *all* words will be found in the vocabulary at the end of the book.)

carne, f., *meat.*
en, *in.*
mantequilla, f., *butter.*
manzana, f., *apple.*
muchacha, f., *girl.*
muchacho, m., *boy.*
palacio, m., *palace.*
pan, m., *bread.*
pera, f., *pear.*
rey, m., *king.*
también, *also, too.*
y, *and.*

1. Compro una pluma. 2. Usted compra un lápiz. 3. Compramos una pluma y un lápiz. 4. Usted compra una casa. 5. Ella compra un jardín. 6. Ustedes compran una casa y un jardín. 7. Un muchacho come una manzana. 8. Una muchacha come una pera. 9. Comen una manzana y una pera. 10. Como pan y mantequilla. 11. Usted come pan y carne. 12. Vivo en un pueblo. 13. Ella vive en un pueblo también. 14. Usted vive en una ciudad. 15. Vivimos en una casa. 16. Un rey vive en un palacio.

ORAL. — A pencil and a pen, a house and a garden, a town and a city, an apple and a pear, a boy and a girl, a house and a palace.

Continue the following: 1. I am buying a pencil, you are buying a pencil, etc. 2. I am eating bread and butter, etc. 3. I live in a city, etc.

1. A boy is buying a pencil. 2. A girl is buying a pen. 3. They are buying a pencil and a pen. 4. I am buying a house. 5. You are buying a garden. 6. We are buying a house and a garden. 7. I am eating an apple. 8. You are eating a pear. 9. We are eating an apple and a pear. 10. They are eating bread and butter. 11. We live in a city. 12. They live in a town. 13. You live in a palace. 14. I live in a house. 15. A king lives in a city.

LESSON II

5. The Definite Article in Spanish has the following forms:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Sing.	**el**	**la**	**lo**[1]
Plur.	**los**	**las**	

el libro, *the book.* — **los** libros, *the books.*
el padre, *the father.* — **los** padres, *the fathers.*
la carta, *the letter.* — **las** cartas, *the letters.*
la madre, *the mother.* — **las** madres, *the mothers.*

(*a*) **El for la.** — Before feminine nouns of two syllables (sometimes also before feminine nouns of more than two syllables) beginning with accented **a** or **ha** the masculine form **el** is used instead of the feminine **la**:

el agua, *the water.* — **el águila,** *the eagle.*
el alma, *the soul.* — **el hambre,** *hunger.*

But in the plural, and before feminine adjectives beginning with **a**, the feminine **la** is retained:

las aguas, *the waters.* — **la alta torre,** *the high tower.*

[1] The neuter article is never used with nouns. Its use is explained in § 43.

6. Plural of Nouns. — (1) Nouns ending in an unaccented vowel (except **y**) or a diphthong add **s** to form the plural:

el hijo, *the son.*	**los hijos,** *the sons.*
la hija, *the daughter.*	**las hijas,** *the daughters.*
la señora, *the lady.*	**las señoras,** *the ladies.*
el palacio, *the palace.*	**los palacios,** *the palaces.*

(2) Nouns ending in a consonant, in **y**, or in an accented vowel add **es** to form the plural:

el señor, *the gentleman.*	**los señores,** *the gentlemen.*
la ciudad, *the city.*	**las ciudades,** *the cities.*
el rey, *the king.*	**los reyes,** *the kings.*
el rubí, *the ruby.*	**los rubíes,** *the rubies.*

NOTE. — Nouns ending in **z** change the **z** to **c** before the **-es** of the plural (cf. Introduction, page xiii): el lápiz, *the pencil*, los lápi**ces**, *the pencils;* el pez, *the fish*, los pe**ces**, *the fishes.*

Exceptions: (*a*) Nouns ending in an unaccented **is** or **es** are unchanged in the plural: **la crisis,** *the crisis,* **las crisis,** *the crises;* **el lunes,** *Monday,* **los lunes,** *the Mondays.*

(*b*) Nouns ending in an accented **e** and the words **papá** and **mamá** add **s** to form the plural: **el café,** *the coffee* or *café,* **los cafés,** *the coffees* or *cafés;* **el pie,** *the foot,* **los pies,** *the feet.*

7. Varied Meanings in the Singular and Plural. — Many names of persons have the peculiarity of designating by the masculine plural persons of both sexes:

el hijo, *the son.*	**los hijos,** *the sons, the sons and daughters, the children.*
el padre, *the father.*	**los padres,** *the fathers, the fathers and mothers, the parents.*
el rey, *the king.*	**los reyes,** *the kings, the king and queen.*
el hermano, *the brother.*	**los hermanos,** *the brothers, the brothers and sisters.*

EXERCISE II

a, *to.*	**escuela,** f., *school.*
beber, *to drink.*	**estudiar,** *to study.*
bien, *well.*	**frutas,** f., *fruit.*
con, *with.*	**lección,** f., *lesson.*
discípulo, m., *pupil.*	**leche,** f., *milk.*
escribir, *to write.*	**sólo,** *only.*

1. El señor compra libros. 2. La señora compra plumas y lápices. 3. Los discípulos estudian en una escuela. 4. Nosotros también estudiamos en la escuela. 5. Los discípulos estudian las lecciones bien. 6. Yo como peras. Usted come manzanas. 7. Comemos frutas. 8. Los señores beben café. 9. Los muchachos beben agua y leche. 10. Yo bebo sólo agua. 11. Ustedes viven en la ciudad. 12. Los discípulos viven en el pueblo. 13. Vivimos en casas. 14. Los peces viven en el agua. 15. Los reyes viven en palacios. 16. Los padres escriben cartas a los hijos. 17. El padre escribe con el lápiz. 18. La madre escribe con la pluma.

Oral. — The boy, the boys, the girl, the girls, the book, the books, the pen, the pens, the school, the schools, the lesson, the lessons, the water, the waters, the pencil, the pencils, the house, the houses, the palace, the palaces, the father, the father-and-mother, the son-and-daughter.

1. We are buying pens and pencils. 2. The pupils are buying books. 3. They are also buying fruit. 4. You (*pl.*) are eating apples and pears. 5. The boys are studying the lessons. 6. The girls are writing letters. 7. The pupils write well. 8. The gentleman drinks only water. 9. The lady is drinking milk. 10. We are drinking coffee. 11. You drink water and milk. 12. We live in cities. 13. The king-and-queen live in the city. 14. The son-and-daughter are writing letters to the parents. 15. The daughter is writing to the mother. 16. We write with pens and pencils. 17. The boy studies in the school.

LESSON III

8. Contraction of the Definite Article. — When the prepositions **de** (*of, from*) and **a** (*to*) precede the masculine singular of the definite article, they contract with it and form **del** and **al** respectively:

el muchacho, *the boy.*	el hijo, *the son.*
del muchacho, *of the boy.*	**del** hijo, *of the son.*
al muchacho, *to the boy.*	**al** hijo, *to the son.*

(*a*) Neither the feminine forms nor the masculine plural forms of the definite article contract with these prepositions:

la muchacha, *the girl.*	la hija, *the daughter.*
de la muchacha, *of the girl.*	**de la** hija, *of the daughter.*
a la muchacha, *to the girl.*	**a la hija,** *to the daughter.*
de los muchachos, *of the boys.*	**de los** hijos, *of the sons.*
de las muchachas, *of the girls.*	**de las** hijas, *of the daughters.*

9. Possession. — Spanish has no case form to express possession. Instead of the **'s** of English, Spanish uses the preposition **de,** reversing the order of the nouns:

the boy's book,	el libro **del** muchacho.
the teacher's house,	la casa **del** maestro.
the lady's daughters,	las hijas **de la** señora.

10. Negative Forms of the Verb. — A verb is made negative by placing **no** (*not*) before it:

No vivo en la ciudad.	*I do not live in the city.*
No vives en la ciudad.	*You do not live in the city.*
Usted no vive en la ciudad.	*You do not live in the city.*

11. Interrogative Forms of the Verb. — The interrogative forms are simply the affirmative forms reversed. An inverted interrogation mark is placed before the question and the usual upright one is placed after it:

¿Escribo yo una carta?	*Am I writing a letter?*
¿Escribes tú una carta?	*Are you writing a letter?*
¿Escribe usted una carta?	*Are you writing a letter?*

12. The present tense of the irregular verbs **ser** and **tener:**

SINGULAR

	ser, *to be.*	**tener,** *to have.*
yo	**soy,** *I am.*	**tengo,** *I have.*
tú	**eres,** *thou art (you are).*	**tienes,** *thou hast (you have).*
usted	**es,** *you are.*	**tiene,** *you have.*
él (ella)	**es,** *he (she) is.*	**tiene,** *he (she) has.*

PLURAL

nosotros, –as	**somos,** *we are.*	**tenemos,** *we have.*
vosotros, –as	**sois,** *you are.*	**tenéis,** *you have.*
ustedes	**son,** *you are.*	**tienen,** *you have.*
ellos, –as	**son** *they are.*	**tienen,** *they have.*

EXERCISE III

casa; en — de, *at the home of.*	**María,** *Mary.*
campo, m., *country* (as distinguished from the city).	**marido,** m., *husband.*
dinero, m., *money.*	**mujer,** f., *woman.*
¿dónde? *where?*	**para,** *to, in order to.*
esposa, f., *wife.*	**pero,** *but.*
hermana, f., *sister.*	**¿qué?** *what?*
hombre, m., *man.*	**¿quién?** *who? whom?*
Juan, *John.*	**señor,** m., *sir, gentleman.*
	sí, *yes.*

1. ¿Es usted el marido de la señora? 2. No; soy el hermano de la señora. 3. Nosotros somos los hijos del maestro. 4. Las señoras son las esposas de los señores. 5. La mujer tiene una casa en la ciudad. 6. Los hombres no tienen dinero. 7. ¿Tienen ustedes dinero? 8. No, señor; no tenemos dinero, pero tenemos una casa y un jardín. 9. Juan estudia en la escuela. Es un discípulo de la escuela. 10. Nosotros también somos discípulos de la escuela. 11. María es la hermana del muchacho. 12. ¿Tiene Juan libros? 13. Sí; tiene libros para estudiar las lec-

ciones. 14. ¿Qué escriben las muchachas? 15. Escriben cartas a los muchachos. 16. ¿No escribe el padre al hijo? 17. No; el padre no escribe al hijo: escribe a la hija. 18. ¿Dónde vive V.? — Vivo en casa del padre de Juan. 19. ¿Dónde vive el hombre? — Vive en casa de los padres de María. 20. Los padres del muchacho viven en el campo.

Oral. — The boy's father, the boy's mother, the parents of the boy, the girl's father, the girl's mother, the mother of the girls, the teacher's book, the girl's pen, the girl's brother, the boy's sister.

Continue the following: 1. Am I writing with the pen? 2. I do not drink coffee. 3. I have not the book. 4. I am a pupil of the school.

1. Is the woman the wife of the man? 2. No; she is the man's sister. 3. I am the wife of the teacher. 4. We are the husbands of the ladies. 5. I study in a school. John and Mary are also pupils of the school. 6. John is the teacher's son. 7. The teacher has no daughter. 8. Have the pupils books? 9. Yes; they have books in order to study the lessons. 10. We also have pens and pencils in order to write. 11. What are you writing? — We are writing letters to the teacher. 12. The boy is writing a letter to John's father-and-mother. 13. To whom is Mary writing? — She is writing a letter to John's sister. 14. Where do the girl's parents live? 15. They live at the teacher's house. 16. The woman's daughters live in the country. 17. I have no money. 18. You have money and a house.

LESSON IV

13. The Imperfect Tense. — There are in Spanish two simple past tenses, the imperfect and the preterite. The imperfect tense is formed by adding to the present stem the endings **-aba, -abas,**

–aba, –ábamos, –abais, –aban, if the verb is of the first conjugation, and **–ía, –ías, –ía, –íamos, –íais, –ían,** if the verb is of the second or third conjugation:

	I	II	III
	I bought, was buying.	*I ate, was eating.*	*I lived, was living.*
yo	compr **aba**	com **ía**	viv **ía**
tú	compr **abas**	com **ías**	viv **ías**
usted	compr **aba**	com **ía**	viv **ía**
él (ella)	compr **aba**	com **ía**	viv **ía**
nosotros, –as	compr **ábamos**	com **íamos**	viv **íamos**
vosotros, –as	compr **abais**	com **íais**	viv **íais**
ustedes	compr **aban**	com **ían**	viv **ían**
ellos, –as	compr **aban**	com **ían**	viv **ían**

(1) The imperfect expresses action incomplete, continued, repeated, or habitual in past time. It is especially the tense of description:

Cuando yo **vivía** en España **hablaba** español.	*When I lived in Spain, I spoke Spanish.*
Yo **leía** mientras que ella **escribía.**	*I read while she wrote.*
Recibía a menudo cartas de mi amigo.	*I often received letters from my friend.*

NOTE. — The imperfect may at times be rendered by '*was buying*', or '*used to buy*', but in the majority of cases it, like the preterite, is translated by the simple past. The difference in the use of the two tenses in Spanish is, however, sharply marked.

14. The Preterite endings for the first conjugation are: **–é, –aste, –ó, amos, –asteis, –aron;** for the second and third conjugations **í, –iste, –ió, imos, isteis, –ieron:**

	I	II	III
yo	compr **é,** *I bought.*	com **í,** *I ate.*	viv **í,** *I lived.*
tú	compr **aste**	com **iste**	viv **iste**
usted	compr **ó**	com **ió**	viv **ió**
él (ella)	compr **ó**	com **ió**	viv **ió**

nosotros, –as	compr **amos**[1]	com **imos**	viv **imos**
vosotros, –as	compr **asteis**	com **isteis**	viv **isteis**
ustedes	compr **aron**	com **ieron**	viv **ieron**
ellos, –as	compr **aron**	com **ieron**	viv **ieron**

(1) The preterite expresses an action simply as an occurrence completed in the past. It is the tense of narration:

Ayer **recibí** una carta de un amigo.	*I received yesterday a letter from a friend.*
¿Quién **hablaba** cuando yo **entré**?	*Who was talking when I came in?*
Vendimos la casa al comerciante.	*We sold the house to the merchant.*

EXERCISE IV

ahora, *now.*
anoche, *last night.*
antes, *formerly.*
aprender, *to learn;* — **a,** *to learn to.*
comer, *to eat, dine.*
como, *as.*
hablar, *to speak, talk.*
hora, f., *hour.*
mucho, *much, a great deal.*
muy, *very.*
siempre, *always, ever.*
trabajar, *to work.* [*it not so?*[2]
verdad, f., *truth;* **¿no es —?** *Is*

1. El padre escribía al hijo mientras que la madre escribía a la hija. 2. ¿Escribió V. ayer al hombre? 3. ¿De qué hablaban VV. cuando yo entré? 4. Hablábamos de la mujer. 5. Anoche recibimos una carta de la esposa de un amigo. 6. Los hermanos de la muchacha trabajaban en el jardín. 7. Ella trabajaba en la casa. 8. Ayer también trabajaron en el jardín, ¿no es verdad? 9. Sí; y trabajaron muy bien. 10. Estudiamos bien en la escuela: aprendimos bien las lecciones. 11. ¿A qué hora comieron VV. ayer? 12. Ella comía a menudo en casa de una amiga. 13. ¿Dónde comieron VV. anoche?—¿Nosotros?

[1] The first person plural preterite has in conjugations I and III the same form as that of the present tense, but the context will readily show what the tense is.

[2] **¿No es verdad?**, sometimes abbreviated to **¿Verdad?** or simply **¿No?**, is universally used to correspond to such phrases as: is he not, are they not, will you not, did we not, etc., when used after a sentence to ask a question regarding the truth of the affirmation: e.g., You are going now; *are you not?* etc.

En casa, como siempre. 14. Antes vivíamos en el campo; ahora vivimos en la ciudad. 15. Cuando yo vivía en España estudiaba, escribía, y hablaba mucho. 16. La muchacha aprendió a hablar español. 17. Yo también aprendí a hablar español. 18. Ayer vendí una casa en el campo. 19. V. tiene una casa en la ciudad, ¿no es verdad?

ORAL. — 1. We were writing, you wrote, they were writing, they wrote, I wrote. 2. I was working, they worked, you worked, you were working. 3. I was talking, we talked, you (*pl.*) were talking, they talked. 4. I lived, you lived, we were living, they were living, you (*pl.*) lived. 5. I ate, you ate, we were eating, they were eating.

1. Formerly I lived in a city; now I live in a town. 2. The teacher wrote while the pupil studied. 3. When we entered, the men were eating. 4. At what hour did you dine when you lived in the country? 5. Did you write a letter to the lady's husband? 6. No; but I received a letter from the lady yesterday. 7. Did the boys learn to speak Spanish when they lived in Spain? 8. No; they used to talk a great deal, but they did not study much. 9. They often wrote letters, but they did not write in Spanish. 10. You spoke with the teacher last night, did you not? 11. Yes; I talked to the teacher about the woman's son. 12. Did they live in the city while he studied in (the)[1] school? 13. Yes; they formerly lived in the city, but now they live in the country. 14. We used to write with pencil; now we write with pen. 15. We used often to receive letters from the teacher. 16. You dined at John's house last night, did you not? 17. No; I dined at home, as always.

[1] Words in parenthesis are to be inserted in translation or substituted for the preceding word.

LESSON V

15. Feminine of Adjectives.— Adjectives in Spanish vary in form to agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify.

The great majority of Spanish adjectives end in **o** in the masculine singular. The feminine is formed by changing the **o** to **a**:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
bueno, *good.*	buena.	estrecho, *narrow.*	estrecha.
malo, *bad.*	mala.	largo, *long.*	larga.
ancho, *broad.*	ancha.	corto, *short.*	corta.

(1) Adjectives not ending in **o** have the same form for both genders:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
fácil, *easy.*	fácil.	feliz, *happy.*	feliz.
cortés, *polite.*	cortés.	pobre, *poor.*	pobre.

(*a*) Adjectives ending in **an, ón,** or **or** (not comparatives), and adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant, form the feminine by adding **a** to the masculine:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
holgazán, *lazy.*	holgazana.	hablador, *talkative.*	habladora.
burlón, *mocking.*	burlona.	inglés, *English.*	inglesa.
		francés, *French.*	francesa.

16. Plural of Adjectives.— The plural of adjectives is formed in the same way as the plural of nouns of similar endings:

Masculine	Feminine	Masc. and Fem.
Sing. viejo, *old.*	vieja.	joven, *young.*
Plu. viejos.	viejas.	jóvenes.
Sing. hermoso, *beautiful.*	hermosa.	fuerte, *strong.*
Plu. hermosos.	hermosas.	fuertes.
		feliz, *happy*
		felices.

17. Apocopation of Adjectives. — The adjectives **bueno, malo, primero** (*first*), **tercero** (*third*), and **postrero** (*last*), lose the final **o** of the masculine singular when they immediately precede their nouns:

un **buen** hijo, *a good son.* el **primer** libro, *the first book.*
un **mal** amigo, *a bad friend.* el **tercer** día, *the third day.*
el **postrer** recurso, *the last resource.*

(1) **Grande** (*large, great*) usually loses the final syllable before a noun of either gender. It is more emphatic, however, when used in the longer form:

un **gran** general, *a great general.* una **gran** ciudad, *a great city.*
de **grande** importancia, *of great importance.*

NOTE. — **Santo** (*saint*) loses its final syllable before the names of saints except those beginning in **To** and **Do:** San Luis, San Juan; but Santo Tomás, Santo Domingo.

18. Adjectives used Substantively. — The noun which an adjective qualifies is often understood and not expressed. In such cases the adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun understood:

el pobre (hombre), *the poor man.*
la **joven** (muchacha), *the young girl.*
la (mujer) **francesa,** *the French woman.*
el caballo blanco y el **negro,** *the white horse and the black one.*

EXERCISE V

año, m., *year.*
aunque, *although.*
calle, f., *street.*
capital, f., *capital.*
difícil, *difficult.*
feo, –a, *ugly.*
hermoso, –a, *beautiful, handsome.*
hoy, *to-day.*
mes, m., *month.*
mucho, –a, *much, many,* ▸ *great deal of.*
perezoso, –a, *lazy.*
poco, –a, *little, few;* adv., *little.*
que, *which, that.*
salud, *f., health.*
semana, f., *week.*
todo, –a, *all.*

1. Ella es buena y hermosa: él es malo y feo. 2. Los muchachos tienen buena salud; son jóvenes y fuertes. 3. Las muchachas son jóvenes, pero no son fuertes. 4. Las calles de la ciudad donde vivimos son largas y anchas. 5. Las calles del pueblo son cortas y estrechas. 6. El Francés es cortés y hablador. 7. Los Ingleses hablan poco; no son muy habladores. 8. La Española es hermosa y no muy habladora. 9. La joven no es perezosa: trabajó bien ayer. 10. Aunque tienen mucho dinero no son felices. 11. ¿Tiene V. un buen libro? — Tengo pocos libros y todos son malos. 12. Estudiamos el primer libro de español. 13. ¿Es difícil? — No; las lecciones son cortas y fáciles. 14. No aprendemos bien las lecciones que son largas y difíciles. 15. Madrid es una gran ciudad; es la capital de España. 16. ¿Qué día de la semana es hoy? — Hoy es el tercer día de la semana. 17. Hoy es el primer día del primer mes del año.

ORAL. — 1. A beautiful girl, a bad girl, a good girl, beautiful girls, bad girls, good girls. 2. A good man, a bad man, good men, bad men. 3. Ugly women, beautiful women. 4. The first book, the first books, the third book. 5. The Englishman, the Englishwoman, the Frenchman, the Frenchwoman.

Continue the following: 1. I am young. 2. I am not old. 3. I have a bad pen. 4. I have good parents.

1. You are a good friend. 2. The boy's brother is not handsome, but he is polite and good. 3. Are the streets of the city in which you live long and narrow? 4. They are long, but they are also wide. 5. The lessons in (of) the book are long, but they are not difficult. 6. I bought the first Spanish book to-day. 7. Although we have many friends, we are not happy. 8. Is the man young and handsome? No; he is old and ugly. 9. He is also very lazy. 10. The young man wrote a letter to a good friend. 11. The Frenchwomen are very polite. 12. They are poor but they are strong and have good health. 13. The old

do not always have bad health. 14. He is a great man; he has a-great-deal-of money. 15. The man's wife is an Englishwoman. 16. Yesterday I sold very few books. 17. The books are old but all are good. 18. What day is to-day? To-day is the first day of the week. 19. It is the third day of the month.

LESSON VI

19. The Future Tense of the regular verbs of all three conjugations is formed by adding directly to the infinitive the endings **–é, –ás, –á, –emos, –éis, –án:**

	I	II	III
	I shall buy, etc.	*I shall eat*, etc.	*I shall live*, etc.
yo	comprar **é**	comer **é**	vivir **é**
tú	comprar **ás**	comer **ás**	vivir **ás**
usted	comprar **á**	comer **á**	vivir **á**
él (ella)	comprar **á**	comer **á**	vivir **á**
nosotros, –as	comprar **emos**	comer **emos**	vivir **emos**
vosotros, –as	comprar **éis**	comer **éis**	vivir **éis**
ustedes	comprar **án**	comer **án**	vivir **án**
ellos, –as	comprar **án**	comer **án**	vivir **án**

20. The Conditional Tense of regular verbs is formed by adding directly to the infinitive the endings **–ía, –ías, –ía, –íamos, –íais, –ían:**

	I should buy.	*I should eat.*	*I should live.*
yo	comprar **ía**	comer **ía**	vivir **ía**
tú	comprar **ías**	comer **ías**	vivir **ías**
usted	comprar **ía**	comer **ía**	vivir **ía**
él (ella)	comprar **ía**	comer **ía**	vivir **ía**
nosotros, –as	comprar **íamos**	comer **íamos**	vivir **íamos**
vosotros, –as	comprar **íais**	comer **íais**	vivir **íais**
ustedes	comprar **ían**	comer **ían**	vivir **ían**
ellos, –as	comprar **ían**	comer **ían**	vivir **ían**

(1) The conditional is used chiefly in the conclusion of conditional sentences (cf. § 40). It is also used with past tenses to express an idea which would be future if the principal tense were present:

Escribe que **comprará** un caballo.	*He writes that he will buy a horse.*
Escribió que **compraría** un caballo.	*He wrote that he would buy a horse.*

21. The future and conditional, aside from their ordinary use as in English, often serve to express surprise, probability, or conjecture regarding an action. If the action be present, the future is used; if the action be past, the conditional is employed:

¿Quién **llamará** a la puerta?	*Who can be knocking at the door?*
Será Juan.	*It is probably John.*
¿Porqué **miraría** tanto mi vestido?	*I wonder why he looked at my clothes so much?*
¿Será ella quien toca el piano?	*Can it be she who is playing the [piano?*
¿Sería ella quien tocaba el piano?	*Could it be she who was playing the piano?*

NOTE. — Neither the future nor the conditional can be used after **si** meaning '*if*', but either may be used after **si** in the sense of '*whether*'.

22. '*Nor*' is expressed in Spanish by **ni**. **Ni** connects negative clauses or sentences as **y** does affirmative ones. It may also be translated by '*and not:*'

No es joven **ni** muy viejo.	*He is not young nor very old.*
Nunca leí aquel libro **ni** quiero leerlo.	*I never read that book nor do I wish to read it.*

23. '*Neither . . . nor*' is expressed (1) with verbs by **no . . . ni . . . ni . . .**, or (2) when no verb is used by **ni . . . ni:**

No tengo **ni** parientes **ni** amigos.	*I have neither relatives nor friends.*
Ni él **ni** yo.	*Neither he nor I.*
Ni hoy **ni** mañana.	*Neither to-day nor to-morrow.*

(*a*) If **ni** stands before the verb, **no** is not required:

Ni come **ni** bebe.	*He neither eats nor drinks.*

EXERCISE VI

algo, *something, anything.*
contestar, *to answer, reply.*
creer, *to believe, think.*
¿cuándo? *when?*
desear, *to wish, want.*
gusto, m., *pleasure.*
hasta, *until.*
llamar, *to call, knock.*
llegar, *to arrive.*
mañana, f., *morning;* **por la —,** *in the morning;* adv., *to-morrow.*
necesitar, *to need.*
o, *or.*
pasado mañana, *the day after to-morrow.*
¿porqué? *why?* **porque,** *because.*
preguntar, *to ask* (a question).
pronto, *soon, quickly.*
sin, *without.*
su, *his, your.* **tan,** *so.*
tarde, f., *evening, afternoon;* **por la —,** *in the evening, in the afternoon.*
temprano, *early.*

1. Mañana compraré los libros que necesito. 2. ¿Necesitará V. mucho dinero? 3. No; no necesitaré mucho porque no compraré muchos libros. 4. ¿Desea V. comer algo? — Sí; comería una buena manzana con mucho gusto. 5. Si estudiamos bien aprenderemos pronto. 6. Sin libros no aprenderíamos pronto. 7. Pregunto si V. escribirá a su padre hoy o mañana. 8. No escribiré ni hoy ni mañana; escribiré pasado mañana. 9. Pregunté si V. desearía algo hoy. 10. Contesté que no desearía comer. 11. ¿Cuándo llegaremos? — Creo que llegaremos mañana. 12. Creía que no llegarían hasta pasado mañana. 13. ¿Cuándo llegará su padre? 14. Escribe que llegará mañana por la mañana. 15. Escribió que llegaría mañana por la tarde. 16. ¿Quién será que llama a la puerta tan temprano? 17. Aprende poco; será porque estudia poco. 18. ¿A qué hora comeremos hoy? — Comeremos muy temprano. 19. Ni el hombre ni su esposa tienen parientes. 20. El pobre no tiene ni hijos ni hermanos.

ORAL. — *Continue the following:* 1. I shall write to-day. 2. I shall not need much money. 3. I should like (*desear*) to speak with you. 4. I have neither pen nor pencil. 5. I shall neither eat nor drink.

1. When shall you arrive at the large city? 2. I shall arrive

to-morrow morning. 3. I thought you would arrive to-day. 4. If they receive the letter to-day, they will write to John to-morrow. 5. If he writes to-day we shall receive the letter to-morrow afternoon. 6. They will answer the day after to-morrow. 7. Without a good teacher you will not learn much. 8. Without a good teacher he would not learn quickly. 9. If you speak to the boy, he will not answer. 10. We asked when he would work. 11. He replied that he would work in the morning. 12. The young woman has neither father nor mother. 13. To-morrow I shall dine at the house of a friend 14. At what hour shall you dine? 15. I believe that we shall dine early. 16. Shall you need anything? I shall need a little (*un poco de*) money. 17. I shall not receive the money until to-morrow. 18. He learned a great deal: it was probably because he studied a great deal.

LESSON VII

24. Position of Adjectives. — Most attributive adjectives follow their nouns in Spanish. The adjective may, however, precede the noun. The position is largely a matter of taste and feeling, but the following rules may serve as a guide: —

(1) Adjectives follow their nouns when used in a literal sense, and when they denote qualities distinguishing their nouns from other objects of the kind, — and hence are to be emphasized:

ojos **azules,**	*blue eyes.*
una mesa **cuadrada,**	*a square table.*
café **caliente,**	*hot coffee.*
la literatura **francesa,**	*French literature.*
la lengua **española,**	*the Spanish language.*

(2) Adjectives precede their nouns when the adjectives are used figuratively and when the noun is the emphatic word and the adjective is simply a descriptive or ornamental epithet:

	el **sabio** autor del libro,	*the learned author of the book.*
But	un rey **sabio,**	*a learned king.*
	una **estrecha** amistad,	*a close friendship.*
But	una calle **estrecha,**	*a narrow street.*
	Sus **negros** cabellos estaban en desorden.	*Her black hair was in disorder.*
But	**Tenía** los cabellos **negros.**	*She had black hair.*

(3) The following short adjectives denoting common qualities may precede or follow their nouns, without any special difference of meaning:

hermoso, *beautiful.*	**bonito,** *pretty*	**malo,** *bad.*
bello, *beautiful.*	**feo,** *ugly.*	**viejo,** *old.*
lindo, *pretty.*	**bueno,** *good.*	**joven,** *young.*
	pequeño, *little.*	

(4) Of two adjectives modifying the same noun, both may precede the noun, or both may follow the noun; or one may precede and one follow in accordance with the above rules. When both precede or both follow the noun, they are connected by **y:**

la **ancha y espaciosa** tierra,	*the broad and spacious earth.*
agua **fresca y pura,**	*pure, cool water.*
los buenos autores **españoles,**	*the good Spanish authors.*

(5) Some adjectives have a different meaning, according as they precede or follow the noun:

un **gran** caballo, *a splendid horse.*	un caballo **grande,** *a big horse.*
un **nuevo** libro, *a different book.*	un libro **nuevo,** *a new book.*
cierta cosa, *a certain thing.*	una cosa **cierta,** *an assured thing.*
un **pobre** autor, *a poor* (bad) *author.*	un autor **pobre,** *an indigent author.*

25. Agreement of Adjectives modifying more than one Noun.

(1) An adjective modifying two or more different nouns of the same gender agrees with them all, as it is in the plural:

El padre y el hijo son **ricos.**	*The father and the son are rich.*
La mesa y la cama son **blancas.**	*The table and the bed are white.*

(2) An adjective modifying two or more nouns of different genders is in the masculine plural if the nouns refer to persons. If the nouns refer to things and are singular, the adjective is in the masculine plural. If the nouns refer to things and are in the plural, the adjective agrees in gender with the noun nearest to it, and is in the plural:

La hija y el hijo son **buenos.**	*The daughter and son are good.*
Mis primas y mi tío son **morenos.**	*My cousins and uncle are dark.*
La madera y el hierro son **duros.**	*Wood and iron are hard.*
Escucharon con los ojos y las orejas **abiertas.**	*They listened with open eyes and ears.*

26. The present tense of the irregular verbs **ir** (*to go*) and **venir** (*to come*):

I go, am going.		*I come, am coming.*	
yo	**voy**	yo	**vengo**
tú	**vas**	tú	**vienes**
usted	**va**	usted	**viene**
él (ella)	**va**	él (ella)	**viene**
nosotros, –as	**vamos**	nosotros, –as	**venimos**
vosotros, –as	**vais**	vosotros, –as	**venís**
ustedes	**van**	ustedes	**vienen**
ellos, –as	**van**	ellos, –as	**vienen**

(*a*) The verb **ir** is especially frequent in the kind of future expressed by the English '*am going to*'. Both **ir** and **venir** require the preposition **a** before a following infinitive, unless purpose is strongly expressed, in which case **para** may be used:

Voy a escribir mañana.	*I am going to write to-morrow.*
Vengo a preguntar por su salud.	*I come to ask about his health.*

(*b*) **Ir** is frequently used familiarly in speaking of the state of one's health:

¿Cómo le (les, pl.) **va?**	*How are you?*
Va bien, gracias, ¿Y V.?	*I am well, thank you. How are you?*

(*c*) The verb **venir** is frequently used in time phrases referring to the future:

la semana que viene,	*next week.*
el mes que viene,	*next month.*
el año que viene,	*next year.*

EXERCISE VII

árbol, m., *tree.*
casa; a —, *home.*
¿cómo? *how?* **dos,** *two.*
Europa, f., *Europe.*
flor, f., *flower.*
frío, –a, *cold.*
guardar, *to keep.*
mano, *f., hand.*
noche, f., *night.*
otro, –a, *other.*
pelo, m., *hair.*
pie, m., *foot.*
por, *in, through.*
primo, –a, m. and f., *cousin.*
taza, f., *cup.*
tomar, *to take.*
uno, –a, *one;* plur., *some.*
vaso, m., *glass.*
ventana, f., *window.*
verde, *green.*

PHRASES

¡Buenos días! *Good morning! Good day!*
¡Buenas noches! *Good evening! Good night!*
¡Buenas tardes! *Good afternoon!*

1. ¿Toma V. café caliente por la mañana? 2. No; tomo sólo un vaso de agua fría. 3. Ayer mi padre compró una casa blanca con ventanas y puertas verdes. 4. Tiene un jardín grande con hermosas flores y muchos árboles. 5. Comimos ayer en el jardín en una mesa cuadrada. 6. Comimos buen pan blanco con mantequilla. 7. Tomamos café en unas pequeñas tazas azules. 8. Compré dos hermosos caballos: el uno es blanco, el otro negro. 9. Vamos a vender el blanco, pero guardaremos el negro. 10. ¿De dónde vienes, Juan? — Vengo de casa de mis viejos padres. 11. Una mujer vieja y fea viene por la calle: vende agua fresca y pura. 12. ¡Muy buenos días, señores! ¿Cómo les va? — Bien, gracias. 13. El maestro lee los buenos autores franceses. 14. ¡Buenas noches! Voy a casa. 15. El año que viene voy a aprender a tocar el piano. 16. El muchacho es moreno: sus ojos y su pelo son negros. 17. Las manos y los pies de mi prima son muy pequeños: es una muchacha muy bonita. 18. La señora y su hija son ricas. 19. Un hombre malo es siempre un mal amigo.

1. The trees and flowers in the little garden are beautiful. 2.

I am going to buy a green house which has many large windows. 3. We now live in a large house in a very long and narrow street. 4. Do you speak the Spanish language? 5. No, but I am going to buy a little Spanish book in order to learn the language. 6. Next year we are going to study Spanish literature. 7. I wish to keep the black horse: the other is old. 8. My mother and sister are very pretty. 9. My sister has beautiful blue eyes. 10. An ugly old man is knocking at the door. 11. He wishes a glass of cold water. 12. We do not have good water. Does he wish a cup of hot coffee? 13. Do you not have good white bread and butter? 14. We dined yesterday in my cousin's pretty garden. 15. She has some little white cups which she bought in Europe. 16. Good night, madame; we are going home. 17. Good day, sir. How are you? — I am well, thank you. 18. Neither the sons nor the father are rich.

LESSON VIII

27. The Present Subjunctive of the regular verbs is formed by adding to the present stem the endings: **-e, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en,** for the first conjugation, and **-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an,** for the second and third conjugations:

	I	II	III
	I may buy.[1]	*I may eat.*	*I may live.*
yo	compr **e**	com **a**	viv **a**
tú	compr **es**	com **as**	viv **as**
usted	compr **e**	com **a**	viv **a**
él (ella)	compr **e**	com **a**	viv **a**
nosotros, -as	compr **emos**	com **amos**	viv **amos**
vosotros, -as	compr **éis**	com **áis**	viv **áis**
ustedes	compr **en**	com **an**	viv **an**
ellos, -as	compr **en**	com **an**	viv **an**

[1] Since there is no subjunctive in English any translation must be inadequate. This is given as the least unsatisfactory.

28. The Imperative proper has only two forms, the second person singular and plural. It is formed by adding to the present stem **a** and **ad** for the first conjugation; **e** and **ed** for the second; **e** and **id** for the third. In the third person singular, and first and third persons plural, the present subjunctive is used in commands:

	I	II	III
Impv.	compr **a** (tú), *buy.*	com **e** (tú).	viv **e** (tú).
Subj.	compr **e** Vd., *buy.*	com **a** Vd.	viv **a** Vd.
Subj.	compr **e** él, *let him buy.*	com **a** él.	viv **a** él.
Subj.	compr **emos,** *let us buy.*	com **amos.**	viv **amos**
Impv.	compr **ad** (vosotros), *buy.*	com **ed** (vosotros).	viv **id** (vosotros).
Subj.	compr **en** Vds., *buy.*	com **an** Vds.	viv **an** Vds.
Subj.	compr **en** ellos, *let them buy.*	com **an** ellos.	viv **an** ellos.

NOTE. — The subject pronouns are not usually expressed with the imperative proper, but they may be expressed with the subjunctive substitutes.

29. The imperative form is never used in negative commands. In negative commands, as in the third person singular and plural, and in the first person plural, the present subjunctive is employed:

No **comas** demasiado.	*Do not eat too much.*
No **escribáis** los ejercicios ahora.	*Do not write the exercises now.*

30. The Independent Subjunctive. — The subjunctive is used in independent clauses to denote, in an imperative or exclamatory way, that the act expressed by the verb is in some way willed (desired, commanded, etc.) or allowed, a governing expression to that effect being elliptically implied:

¡**Viva** el rey!	*Long live the king!*
Lea Vd. el libro.	*Read the book.*
No **habléis** tan alto.	*Do not talk so loud.*

(1) **Que** may be used when the command is not addressed directly to the person charged with its execution:

Que Juan lleve la carta.	*Let John take the letter.*
Que pase.	*Let him come in.*

31. Adverbs in -mente. — Adverbs may be formed from most adjectives by adding the termination **mente** to the feminine singular form, or, in the case of adjectives which do not vary for gender, to the singular form:

severo, *severe.*	**severamente,** *severely.*
franco, *frank.*	**francamente,** *frankly.*
fácil, *easy.*	**fácilmente,** *easily.*
dulce, *sweet.*	**dulcemente,** *sweetly.*

(1) If two or more such adverbs follow one another, **mente** is appended only to the last:

severa pero francamente,	*severely but frankly.*
Habló clara y distintamente.	*He spoke clearly and distinctly.*

EXERCISE VIII

abrir, *to open.* [*fore.*
antes, adv., *before;* — **de,** prep., *be-*
aquí, *here;* **por —,** *this way.*
asiento, m., *seat.*
barato, -a, *cheap.*
caro, -a, *dear.*
correo, m., *mail; post office.*
cuarto, m., *room.*
demasiado, *too, too much.*
derecho, -a, *right;* **de la —,** *on the right.*
despacio, *slowly.*
guardián, m., *policeman.*
izquierdo, -a, *left;* **de la izquierda,** *on the left.*
llevar, *to carry, take.*
niño, m., *child.*
olvidar, *to forget.*
palabra, f., *word.*
tarde, *late.*
sombrero, m., *hat.*
voz, f., *voice.*
vuestro, -a, *your.*
ya, *already.*

1. Escriba V. las cartas; el correo llegará pronto. 2. Habla clara y distintamente. 3. Compre V. el sombrero negro; es muy barato. 4. No olvidemos las palabras que aprendimos. 5. Dos señores llaman a la puerta. — ¡Que pasen! 6. Tomen VV. asientos, señores. 7. Niños, aprended bien vuestras lec-

ciones y pronto hablaréis español. 8. Come para vivir; no vivas para comer. 9. Llame V. al[1] niño; ya es tarde. 10. No llamen VV. al[1] niño; llamen a[1] su madre. 11. Pregunte V. al guardián dónde vive el señor. 12. Contestad, niños; pero no contestéis en voz tan alta. 13. Que conteste el muchacho francamente. 14. ¡Viva España! 15. No entre V. por aquí; entre por la puerta de la izquierda. 16. Llame V. a la puerta de la derecha antes de entrar en el cuarto. 17. Comed despacio y no comáis demasiado. 18. No olvide V. que vamos a casa temprano. 19. Lleve V. la carta al correo. 20. No abra V. las puertas y ventanas.

[1] Do not translate the *a*. Cf. 42.

1. Ask the[1] boy where he lives. 2. Where do you (*tú*) live, boy? Answer. 3. Do not forget (V.) that we are going to dine at the gentleman's house. 4. Let us speak to the teacher. 5. Sell (V.) your house in the city and buy a house in the country. 6. Eat bread and butter; do not eat much meat. 7. Do not buy (V.) the white hat: it is too dear. The black one is very cheap. 8. Good day, gentlemen: come in! 9. Take a seat (*tú*), John, and talk slowly. 10. Do not forget (V.) that the letter will go[2] to-day. 11. Let them not eat too much. 12. Carry the letter to the post office now and it will arrive to-day. 13. Long live the king and queen! 14. Someone is knocking. Let him enter (in) the room on the right and take a seat. 15. Children, write the words that you learn in your books. 16. Open the windows in the room. 17. Do not reply in so loud a voice, John. 18. Open the door on the left. 19. Let us enter (in) the house.

[1] *al.* [2] *saldrá*

LESSON IX

32. Comparison of Adjectives. — The comparative of adjectives is formed by placing **más** (*more*), or **menos** (*less*), before the positive; the superlative, by placing the proper form of the definite article or of the possessive adjective before the comparative:

rico, *rich*,	**más** rico, *richer*,	**el más** rico, *the richest*.
rica, *rich*,	**más** rica, *richer*,	**la más** rica, *the richest*.
ricos, *rich*,	**más** ricos, *richer*,	**los más** ricos, *the richest*.
ricas, *rich*,	**más** ricas, *richer*,	**las más** ricas, *the richest*.
caro, *dear*,	**menos** caro, *less dear*,	**el menos** caro, *the least dear*.
cara, *dear*,	**menos** cara, *less dear*,	**la menos** cara, *the least dear*.

(*a*) If the adjective which is compared follows the noun, the article precedes the noun, and **más** or **menos** stands before the adjective:

el hombre más rico del mundo, *the richest man in the world.*

(*b*) When a noun is qualified by two or more regularly compared adjectives in the superlative, **más** or **menos** may be written before the first only:

el río más largo y ancho, *the longest and broadest river.*

(*c*) '*In*' after superlatives is usually **de**:

la ciudad más grande del país, *the largest city in the country.*

33. Irregular Comparison. — The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

bueno, *good*,	**mejor,** *better*,	**el mejor,** *the best*.
malo, *bad*,	**peor,** *worse*,	**el peor,** *the worst*.
grande, *large*,	mayor, *larger*,	el mayor, *the largest*.
pequeño, *small*,	menor, *smaller*,	el menor, *the smallest*.

(1) The regular comparison of all of these words is permissible, but the regular comparison of **bueno** and **malo** is rare.

(2) **Mayor** and **menor** when applied to persons mean '*older*' and '*younger*':

Juan es **mayor** que yo.	*John is older than I.*
Mi hermano **menor.**	*My younger brother.*

34. Absolute Superlative. — Adjectives denoting the possession of a quality in a high degree, but without comparison, are formed rather freely by adding **ísimo** to the positive. The

positive loses its final vowel before this termination, and the diphthongs **ie** and **ue** usually revert to **e** and **o** respectively:[1]

fácil, *easy*,	facil**ísimo**, *very easy*.
rico, *rich*,	riqu**ísimo**, *very rich*.[2]
fuerte, *strong*,	fort**ísimo** *very strong*.
ardiente, *ardent*,	ard**entísimo** *very ardent*.

NOTE 1. — Adjectives in **ro** and **re** usually add **rimo** instead of **ísimo**: **mísero** (*wretched*); **misérrimo**; **célebre** (*famous*), **celebérrimo**.

NOTE 2. — The absolute superlative may also be expressed, as in English, by the aid of various adverbs: such as, **muy** (*very*), **bastante** (*rather*), **sumamente** (*extremely*), **demasiado** (*too*), etc.

35. '*Than*' after comparatives is usually **que**; but before numerals, in affirmative clauses where there is no comparison, **de** is used:

La niña es más bonita **que** la madre.	*The daughter is prettier than the mother.*
Tengo más **de** cien libros.	*I have more than a hundred books.*
Más **de** una vez.	*More than once.*

NOTE. — **No . . . más que** means '*only*':

No tiene más **que** una peseta.	*He has only one peseta.*

(*a*) If the second member of the comparison is a clause referring to the whole idea expressed in the first clause, and contains a personal verb, '*than*' is expressed by **de lo que**:

Es mayor de **lo que** yo creía.	*He is older than I thought.*
Es menos prudente de **lo que** parece.	*He is less prudent than he appears.*

(*b*) If the second member of a comparison is a clause referring to a particular noun in the first member, rather than to the whole idea, '*than*' may be expressed by **de**, the form of the article agreeing with the noun, and **que**:

Tiene más dinero **del que** necesita.	*He has more money than he needs.*
Cometió más crímenes de **los que** confesó.	*He committed more crimes than he confessed.*

[1] See Introduction, page xiii. [2] See Introduction, page xii.

36. Comparison of Equality. — '*As much . . . as*', or '*as many . . . as*' is expressed by **tanto . . . cuanto**, or **tanto . . . como**. '*As* or *so . . . as*' is expressed by **tan . . . como**:

El no tiene **tanto** dinero **como** yo.	*He has not so much money as I.*
Compró **tantas** plumas **cuantos** (**como**) lápices.	*He bought as many pens as pencils.*
No son **tan** felices **como** nosotros.	*They are not as happy as we are.*

(1) '*The more . . . the more*' is expressed by **cuanto más . . . tanto más**; **tanto más . . . más**; mientras más . . . más. '*The less . . . the less*' is expressed in the same way, substituting **menos** for **más**:

Cuanto más dinero gana (**tanto**) **más** quiere ganar.	*The more money he earns, the more he wants to earn.*
Mientras más estudiamos, **más** aprendemos.	*The more we study, the more we learn.*
Cuanto menos trabaja, **menos** quiere trabajar.	*The less he works, the less he wishes to work.*

EXERCISE IX

alto, –a, *tall.*	**guante,** m., *glove.*
Antonio, *Antony.*	**iglesia,** f., *church.*
aún, *still.*	**Londres,** *London.*
azúcar, m., *sugar.*	**medio, –a,** *half.*
edad, f., *age.*	**mismo, –a,** *same.*
este, m., **esta,** f., *this.*	**nieve,** f., *snow.*
familia, f., *family.*	**rosa,** f., *rose.*
Francia, f., *France.*	**tiempo,** m., *time.*
grueso, –a, *thick.*	**vino,** m., *wine.*

1. Mi hermano es alto, pero mi padre es aún más alto. 2. La rosa es la más hermosa flor del jardín. 3. Juan es más fuerte que su hermano, pero es menos fuerte que Antonio. 4. Este libro es grueso, pero yo tengo uno que es aún más grueso. 5. En media hora llegaremos al río más largo del país. 6. ¿Es V. menor que su hermana? — No; soy mayor que mi hermana que

es la menor y la más bonita de la familia. 7. París es la ciudad más grande de Francia, pero es menos grande y menos rica que Londres. 8. Juan es al mismo tiempo el peor muchacho de la escuela y el menor de edad. 9. ¿No tiene V. mejor vino? — Este vino es el mejor y el más caro que tenemos. 10. Tenemos para hoy una lección facilísima. 11. Cervantes es un autor celebérrimo. 12. Esta ciudad tiene más de cien iglesias. 13. Juan no tiene más que una hermana. Yo tengo más hermanas y hermanos que Juan. 14. No llame usted más de una vez. 15. Es más alto de lo que creía. 16. No compre V. más guantes; ya tiene V. más de los que necesita. 17. No tenemos tanto dinero como ellos, pero somos más felices. 18. El azúcar es tan blanco como la nieve. 19. Cuanto más compra, más desea comprar.

1. This river is the longest and widest in the world. 2. The black book is larger than the blue one. 3. My best friend used to live in London. 4. Mary is at the same time the prettiest and the oldest of the family. 5. This wine is better and dearer than the white. 6. Spain is less beautiful and less rich than France. 7. I have a sister who is younger than I and a brother who is older. 8. The king of Spain has more than a hundred[1] horses. 9. The little town has only one street. 10. The old lady is very rich; she has more money than she needs. 11. The merchant sells as many pens as pencils. 12. The sugar that you bought is very white. 13. The boy is older than I thought. 14. Next year I shall buy more books than I bought this year. 15. She is as good as [she is][2] pretty. 16. The more money we have the more we wish to have. 17. I am not so strong as my brother although he is younger than I. 18. London is the largest city in the world.

[1] *cien*. [2] Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

LESSON X

37. The Definite Article. — Spanish differs from English in the use of the definite article chiefly in the following respects:

(1) Spanish requires the definite article: —

(*a*) Before all nouns used in a generic sense, i.e., where '*in general*', '*all*', '*every*', may be understood. This rule may affect abstract or collective nouns, nouns of material in the singular, and any noun in the plural:

La vida es breve.	*Life is short.*
El oro es más precioso que la plata.	*Gold is more precious than silver.*
Los libros son buenos amigos.	*Books are good friends.*
La geografía es un estudio útil.	*Geography is a useful study.*

(*b*) Before words or expressions of time:

La semana pasada.	*Last week.*
Llegará **el** lunes.	*He will arrive on Monday.*
En la primavera.	*In (the) spring.*

(*c*) Before titles (except in direct address), and before names of persons modified by an adjective:

El señor Menéndez.	*Mr. Menéndez.*
El general García.	*General García.*
El joven Escipión.	*Scipio, the younger.*

NOTE. — The article is never used with the title **Don** or **Doña** (titles used only before the Christian names of persons); **mi amigo, Don Eduardo,** *my friend, Edward.*

(*d*) Before the names of countries and continents, when such names are descriptive or qualified by adjectives. The article is optional and emphatic with unmodified names of countries. It is rarely used after the common short prepositions **a, de, en, para,** etc.:

Los Estados Unidos.	*The United States.*
La Gran Bretaña.	*Great Britain.*
La Europa occidental.	*Western Europe.*
¿Progresa España verdadera[mente?	*Is Spain really progressing?*
La historia de España.	*The history of Spain.*

NOTE. — The names of a few countries require the article even after prepositions, among them: **el** Perú, **el** Brasil, **el** Canadá, **el** Japón, and **la** China.

(*e*) Before nouns of weight and measure:

dos duros **la** libra.	*two dollars a pound.*
una peseta **la** docena.	*one peseta a dozen.*

(*f*) Before adjectives of nationality to denote the language, except after **hablar**:

	El español es difícil.	*Spanish is difficult.*
	Él enseña **el** francés.	*He teaches French.*
But:	Habla alemán.	*He speaks German.*

NOTE. — The article is used after **hablar** when the verb is modified by an adverb: Habla bien **el** francés, *He speaks French well.*

(*g*) In various conventional phrases: ir a **la** escuela, a **la** iglesia, a **la** ciudad, *to go to school, to church, to town;* dar **las** buenas noches, *to bid good night;* dar **el** parabién, *to congratulate,* etc.

(2) Spanish omits the definite article:—

(*a*) With appositional and modified predicate nouns:

Don Quijote, **obra** del inmortal Cervantes.	*Don Quijote, the work of the immortal Cervantes.*
Londres, **capital** de Inglaterra.	*London, the capital of England.*
Es **hija** de un Americano.	*She is the daughter of an American.*

NOTE. — The article is used, however, before appositional nouns which are modified by a regularly compared superlative adjective:

Barcelona, **la** ciudad más grande de España. *Barcelona, the largest city of Spain.*

(*b*) Before numerals when used as titles:

Alfonso **trece.**	*Alphonso the thirteenth.*

(*c*) In a number of prepositional phrases, especially before the words **casa, misa, caza, pesca, paseo; estar en casa,** *to be at home,* **ir a casa,** *to go home,* **ir a misa, a paseo, a caza, a pesca,** *to go to mass, go walking, go hunting, go fishing,* etc.

38. The Indefinite Article. — The indefinite article is omitted in Spanish: —

(*a*) Before predicative nouns denoting class, profession, occupation, rank, etc., when such nouns are employed in a general sense as adjectives:

Su amigo es maestro.	*His friend is a teacher.*
Es Americano.	*He is an American.*

NOTE. — The indefinite article is not omitted with predicative nouns when the noun denotes a leading characteristic or when the noun is to be strongly emphasized:

Es un cobarde.	*He is a regular coward.*

(*b*) Before various indefinites, such as, **otro, tal, cierto, semejante**:

Otro día.	*Another day.*
Nunca ví tal cosa.	*I never saw such a thing.*
Cierto libro.	*A certain book.*
Semejante majadero.	*Such a blockhead.*

(*c*) Like the definite article, before appositional nouns:

Calderón, poeta dramático.	*Calderón, a dramatic poet.*

EXERCISE X

amar, *to love.*
cura, m., *priest.*
estación, f., *season.*
hierro, m., *iron.*
huevo, m., *egg.*
invierno, m., *winter.*
lluvia, f., *rain.*
maduro, –a, *ripe.*
Méjico, m., *Mexico.*
metal, m., *metal.*
nube, f., *cloud.*
otoño, m., *autumn.*
próximo, –a, *next.*
sano, –a, *healthful.*
tabaco, m., *tobacco.*
verano, m., *summer.*
viajar, *to travel.*

1. El oro y la plata son los metales más caros, pero el hierro es el más útil al hombre. 2. Las mujeres aman las flores. 3. La semana próxima viajaremos por Francia. 4. El señor García

habla con el señor cura. 5. Mis tíos vivían antes en el Canadá, ahora viven en Méjico. 6. Compre V. el café del Brasil; es fuerte pero es muy barato. 7. El señor López vende carne a una peseta la libra y huevos a una peseta la docena. 8. En el verano viajamos a menudo por la Gran Bretaña. 9. La primavera es la más hermosa estación del año. 10. El mes que viene es el primer mes del otoño. 11. El invierno es la estación más fría del año. 12. Enseño el francés y el español, pero no hablo bien el alemán. 13. El año pasado compré el Quijote, obra del gran Cervantes. 14. Cierto día del mes pasado recibí una carta de un amigo español. 15. Alfonso trece es rey de España. 16. Lleve usted hoy este libro y mañana lleve usted otro. 17. Estudiamos la geografía y la historia; son estudios utilísimos. 18. El tabaco es muy barato en España. 19. La fruta madura es sana. 20. La lluvia y la nieve vienen de las nubes.

1. He arrived last week. He will travel in Spain next week. 2. The capital of Brazil is Rio de Janeiro. 3. Mr. López's brother is a priest. 4. She is an English woman but she lives in Canada. 5. Alphonso, the king of Spain, is a young man. 6. The good priest loves children. 7. I bought eggs yesterday at two pesetas a dozen and butter at one peseta a pound. 8. I need a certain book. 9. We are studying French and German. 10. Do you wish to learn to speak Spanish? 11. Spanish is more difficult than French. 12. In winter we live in the city; in summer we live in the country. 13. Next autumn my sister and I are going to study in London. 14. We shall travel in Great Britain in the spring. 15. Meat is dear in this country, but fruit is very cheap. 16. Gold, silver and iron are the metals most useful to man. 17. Books are often better friends than men. 18. The pupils do not learn well either geography or history.

LESSON XI

39. The Imperfect, Conditional, and Future Subjunctives of Regular Verbs are formed on the Preterite Stem:

IMPERFECT

	I bought, should buy.	*I ate, should eat.*	*I lived, should live.*
yo	compr **ase**	com **iese**	viv **iese**
tú	compr **ases**	com **ieses**	viv **ieses**
usted	compr **ase**	com **iese**	viv **iese**
él (ella)	compr **ase**	com **iese**	viv **iese**
nosotros, –as	compr **ásemos**	com **iésemos**	viv **iésemos**
vosotros, –as	compr **aseis**	com **ieseis**	viv **ieseis**
ustedes	compr **asen**	com **iesen**	viv **iesen**
ellos, –as	compr **asen**	com **iesen**	viv **iesen**

CONDITIONAL

	I bought, should buy.	*I ate, should eat.*	*I lived, should live.*
yo	compr **ara**	com **iera**	viv **iera**
tú	compr **aras**	com **ieras**	viv **ieras**
usted	compr **ara**	com **iera**	viv **iera**
él (ella)	compr **ara**	com **iera**	viv **iera**
nosotros, –as	compr **áramos**	com **iéramos**	viv **iéramos**
vosotros, –as	compr **arais**	com **ierais**	viv **ierais**
ustedes	compr **aran**	com **ieran**	viv **ieran**
ellos, –as	compr **aran**	com **ieran**	viv **ieran**

FUTURE

	I buy, etc.	*I eat,* etc.	*I live,* etc.
yo	compr **are**	com **iere**	viv **iere**
tú	compr **ares**	com **ieres**	viv **ieres**
usted	compr **are**	com **iere**	viv **iere**
él (ella)	compr **are**	com **iere**	viv **iere**
nosotros, –as	compr **áremos**	com **iéremos**	viv **iéremos**
vosotros, –as	compr **areis**	com **iereis**	viv **iereis**
ustedes	compr **aren**	com **ieren**	viv **ieren**
ellos, –as	compr **aren**	com **ieren**	viv **ieren**

(*a*) There is little or no difference in meaning or use between the imperfect and the conditional subjunctives in modern Spanish. Except in conditional sentences they may be used interchangeably. The imperfect is, however, the more frequent.

(*b*) The future subjunctive has become so rare in modern Spanish that it may be neglected for the present (cf. § 108).

40. The Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences. — A past subjunctive is required in at least one clause of conditions contrary to fact, and in less vivid future conditions. In the if-clause either the imperfect or conditional subjunctive may be used; in the conclusion either the conditional subjunctive or the conditional indicative.

(1) A condition contrary to fact is a conditional sentence which implies that the supposition and the conclusion stated are not true. In accordance with the statement above, this kind of sentence may be expressed in the following forms:

Si estudiásemos, aprenderíamos.
Si estudiáramos, aprenderíamos.
Si estudiásemos, aprendiéramos.
Si estudiáramos, aprendiéramos.

If we studied (but we do not), *we should learn* (but we do not).

(*a*) Of these four forms the first two are to be preferred. The conditional indicative is more common in the conclusion, except with the verb **haber** (cf. § 68, 3) which is generally in the subjunctive.

(2) A less vivid future condition is a conditional sentence in which the conclusion states what would be the result, in case the supposition contained in the if-clause were carried out. The forms used in this kind of statement are the same as those in conditions contrary to fact:

Si estudiásemos, aprenderíamos.
Si estudiáramos, aprenderíamos.

If we should study (in the future) *we should learn.*

etc.

41. Comparison of Adverbs. — The comparative of adverbs,

like that of adjectives, is formed by placing **más** before the positive. The comparative usually serves also as superlative:

fácilmente, *easily.* **más fácilmente,** *more* (or *most*) *easily.*

(*a*) The following adverbs are compared irregularly:

Positive	Comparative
mucho, *much.*	**más,** *more, most.*
poco, *little.*	**menos,** *less, least.*
bien, *well.*	**mejor,** *better, best.*
mal, *badly.*	**peor,** *worse, worst.*

EXERCISE XI

alcoba, f., *bedroom.*
bajar, *to go down.*
biblioteca, f., *library.*
buscar, *to look for.*
cocina, f., *kitchen.*
comedor, m., *dining room.*
diez, *ten.*
entender, *to understand.*
escalera, f., *stairs.*
escuchar, *to listen to.*
gastar, *to spend.*
hallar, *to find.*
lo que, *what.*
mil, *thousand.*
nuestro, –a, *our.*
peso, m., *dollar.*
prestar, *to lend.*
quinientos, *five hundred.*
sala, f., *parlor.*
todo, –a, *all;* **–s los días,** *every day.*
varios, –as, *several.*

1. Si yo viviese en España, hablaría español todos los días. 2. Los discípulos hallarían la lengua más fácil, si estudiasen más las lecciones. 3. Prestaríamos mil pesos a nuestro hermano, si no necesitásemos todo el dinero que tenemos. 4. Vosotros aprenderíais más pronto, si escucharais mejor. 5. Si yo escribiese la carta hoy, no llegaría antes de mañana. 6. Baje V. la escalera y hallará lo que busca. 7. Siempre gasta más de lo que gana. 8. Si ganase quinientos pesos al mes, gastaría mil. 9. Yo entendería mejor lo que V. desea, si hablase más distintamente. 10. Si V. desea entrar en el cuarto, llame a la puerta. 11. No compraremos la casa, si no tiene un jardín grande con árboles y flores. 12. Nuestra casa tiene diez cuartos: una sala,

una biblioteca, un comedor, una cocina y varias alcobas. 13. Ganaría más si trabajase mejor. 14. Ya tiene V. más vestidos de los que necesita: yo no compraría más. 15. Si V. busca en la biblioteca, hallará el libro que desea. 16. Escuchemos las palabras del maestro.

1. If you studied more you would not find the language so difficult. 2. Without your[1] books you would not learn so rapidly. 3. If you should write your letter to-day it would arrive at London to-morrow. 4. If you do not speak more distinctly, I shall not understand what you wish. 5. We should not buy a house, if we did not need more rooms than we have. 6. We should need a library, a parlor, a dining room and a kitchen. 7. If I bought a house, I should need more bedrooms than you have. 8. I would not spend all that I earn. 9. If he would look in the room on the left, he would find what he is looking for. 10. If you would listen, you would understand better. 11. If they would spend less money, they would not need to work so much. 12. I would lend you[2] more than (a) thousand pesetas, if you needed the money. 13. If I buy more clothes, I shall need more money. 14. If you lived in Spain, you would soon learn to speak Spanish. 15. If he would work every day, he would earn more. 16. Go down (*vosotros*) to the library and study your lessons.

[1] *sus.* [2] *Le prestaría.*

LESSON XII

42. The Direct Object with *a*. — If the direct object of a verb is (1) the name of a definite living being or of a collection of living beings, or (2) a personified noun, or (3) the name of a city or country not preceded by an article, the preposition **a** must be used before it:

Amo **a** mi madre.	*I love my mother.*
El rey convocó **al** pueblo.	*The king called the people together.*

Llamó **a** la muerte.	*He invoked death.*
Visité **a** España el año pasado.	*I visited Spain last year.*

NOTE. — The preposition serves in this case only to indicate the object and is not to be translated.

(1) The preposition is sometimes used with the names of things to distinguish between subject and object or predicate object:

Llaman **al** vino la leche de los viejos.	*They call wine the milk of the aged.*
El invierno sigue **al** otoño.	*Winter follows autumn.*

(2) The preposition is omitted: —

(*a*) After the verb **tener** in the sense of *to possess:*

	Tengo una prima muy bonita.	*I have a very pretty cousin.*
	No tenemos criados.	*We have no servants.*
But	Tengo **al** señor por un hombre honrado.	*I consider the gentleman to be an honorable man.*
	Aquí tiene V. **a** mi hijo.	*Here is my son.*

(*b*) Usually before a numeral, except **uno**:

Veo seis hombres.	*I see six men.*
Mataron cien soldados.	*They killed a hundred soldiers.*

43. The Neuter Article *Lo* is used before the masculine singular form of adjectives and participles to express abstractly the idea contained in the word:

lo útil, *the useful, what is useful.*	**lo** bueno, *the good, what is good.*
lo alto, *the top.*	**lo** sucedido, *what has happened.*

(*a*) **Lo** with an adjective or adverb and the conjunction **que** has the force of 'how.' An adjective modified by **lo que** agrees in gender and number with the noun expressed or implied:

V. sabe **lo** mucho **que** le amo.	*You know how much I love him.*
Lo bien **que** me trataron . . .	*How well they treated me . . .*
No sabe V. **lo** buena **que** es.	*You do not know how good she is.*
Verá V. **lo** atentos **que** son.	*You will see how polite they are.*

(*b*) **Lo** is used before the superlative of adverbs, if the adverb is followed by a qualifying word:

Lo más pronto posible.	*As soon as possible.*
Lo más bajo que puede V.	*As low as you can.*

44. The present tense of the irregular verbs **poder** (*to be able*) and **querer** (*to wish, want, love*):

yo	**puedo**	**quiero**
tú	**puedes**	**quieres**
usted	**puede**	**quiere**
él (**ella**)	**puede**	**quiere**
nosotros, –as	**podemos**	**queremos**
vosotros, –as	**podéis**	**queréis**
ustedes	**pueden**	**quieren**
ellos, –as	**pueden**	**quieren**

NOTE. — **Querer** with a personal object means '*to love*'. With the meaning '*to wish*', '*want*', it differs little from **desear**, but is much more common and less formal.

EXERCISE XII

cocinera, f., *cook.*
e, *and;* used for **y** before **i** or **hi**.
honor, m., *honor.*
Italia, f., *Italy.*
jardinero, m., *gardener.*
Juanito, *little John, Johnny.*
más bien, *rather.*
odiar, *to hate.*
patria, *f., country, native land.*
tres, *three.*

1. Quiero a mis padres y mis hermanos. 2. Juanito quiere a su hermana y la hermana quiere a Juanito. 3. María, ¿a quién llamas? — Llamo a mi madre. 4. Ama a su patria, pero ama a su mujer y a su honor mucho más. 5. El señor desea un buen jardinero. 6. La señora desea una buena cocinera. 7. El verano pasado visitamos a España. 8. El verano que viene queremos visitar a Italia e Inglaterra también. 9. Señor Sánchez, ¿tiene V. hijos? — Sí, señor; tengo tres: dos hijos y una hija. 10. Aquí tiene V. a mi hijo menor. 11. No podemos tener al señor por un buen comerciante. 12. Amemos lo bueno

y odiemos lo malo. 13. Queremos lo útil más bien que lo bello. 14. Hable V. lo más bajo que puede. 15. V. sabe lo mucho que quiero a mi hijo. 16. Todo lo barato es caro. 17. Escribiremos lo más pronto posible. 18. Llamen ustedes al criado; quiero un poco de agua caliente. 19. No puedo hallar a mi hermano. 20. No podemos olvidar lo buena que es.

1. John, do you love your brother? 2. Yes, but I love my sister more. 3. I am looking for my father. 4. I cannot find either my father or my mother. 5. This man loves his country more than (he loves) his wife or his children. 6. If you want anything, call the servant. 7. You will find John in the dining room. 8. Call the children: we shall dine soon. 9. We have two brothers and a sister. 10. My mother is going to visit England next summer. She has a brother who lives in London. 11. Last summer she visited Brazil. 12. We do not like what-is-ugly. 13. They consider this man a good gardener. 14. Here is the best merchant in the city. 15. I am looking for a good cook. 16. I cannot forget how much she loved what-is-good and beautiful. 17. For whom are you looking? — I am looking for my friend. 18. Call your brother: I wish to talk with him (*él*). 19. What-is-useful is not always beautiful. 20. Children, eat as slowly as you can. 21. You do not know how good these apples are.

LESSON XIII

There are in Spanish two classes of personal pronouns: (1) those forms which are used as subject, object, and indirect object of verbs and which may be called conjunctive forms; and (2) those forms which are used only after prepositions, and which may be called prepositional forms.

45. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

	Subject	Indirect Object	Direct Object
		SINGULAR	
1st. pers.	**yo**, *I.*	**me**, *to me.*	**me**, *me.*
2nd. pers.	**tú**, *you (thou).*	**te**, *to you (thee).*	**te**, *you (thee).*
3rd. pers.	**usted**, *you.*	**le**, *to you* (m. & f.)	**le, la**, *you* (m. & f).
	él, *he, it.*	**le**, *to him, to it.*	**le, lo**, *him, it.*
	ella, *she, it.*	**le**, *to her, to it.*	**la**, *her, it.*
	ello, *it.*		**lo**, *it.*
		PLURAL	
1st. pers.	**nosotros, –as**, *we.*	**nos**, *to us.*	**nos**, *us.*
2nd. pers.	**vosotros, –as**, *you.*	**os**, *to you.*	**os**, *you.*
3rd. pers.	**ustedes**, *you.*	**les**, *to you* (m. & f.)	**los, las**, *you* (m. & f.)
	ellos, *they* (m.)	**les**, *to them.*	**los**, *them.*
	ellas, *they* (f.)	**les**, *to them.*	**las**, *them.*

Note 1. The term conjunctive is not strictly accurate, since the subject forms of the pronouns may be used without a verb, but the term is chosen as the most convenient in general use.

Note 2. The masculine object forms **le** and **lo** are used quite optionally, but **le** is preferably used for persons and **lo** for things. For the feminine indirect object **la** and **las** are also found.

46. Tú and Usted. — The pronoun of the second person, **tú**, corresponds grammatically to the English *thou*. It is used in addressing relatives, intimate friends, children, animals, and in sacred and poetical language. **Vosotros** is the plural of **tú**. The ordinary pronoun of polite address is **usted**, a contraction of of **vuestra merced** (your grace). Though used as a pronoun of the second person, it is grammatically of the third person. It is invariable for gender in the subject form, but has a masculine and feminine object form.

47. Ello, '*It*,' as the subject of a verb, is rarely expressed in Spanish. If '*it*' is expressed and refers to a thing, **él** or **ella** is used. **Ello** is used only in referring to an idea or to something

indefinite. As subject it is most frequent in the phrase **ello es,** *'the fact is'*.

(1) **Lo,** the conjunctive object form of **ello,** is used predicatively, referring to an adjective or noun preceding. In general there is no corresponding word in English, but it may sometimes be translated by *'so'*:

No soy rico, pero espero serlo.	*I am not rich, but I hope to be.*
¿Son VV. soldados? — **Lo** somos.	*Are you soldiers? We are.*

48. The Subject Pronoun is usually, though not necessarily, left unexpressed, unless required for emphasis, contrast or clearness. **Usted,** however, usually appears in every sentence in which reference is made to the person addressed, except in short sentences and in familiar address.

NOTE. — The free order of the Spanish sentence permits the subject pronoun either to precede or follow the verb, even in declarative sentences.

49. Position of Object Pronouns. — Object pronouns regularly stand before the verb:

Me llaman.	*They are calling me.*
Nos escriben todos los días.	*They write us every day.*
Le veo desde aquí.	*I see him from here.*

(*a*) When the verb is negative the **no** precedes the pronoun object:

No lo quiero.	*I do not want it.*

(1) The object of a finite verb is, in literary language, sometimes appended to the verb, when the verb stands at the beginning of the sentence or clause:

Miráronme con curiosidad.	*They looked at me with curiosity.*
Réstame decir.	*It remains for me to say.*

(2) The object of an infinitive or an affirmative imperative

(or subjunctive used as an imperative), or of a gerund, follows the verb and is appended to it:

No quiere dejar**me** entrar.	*He will not allow me to enter.*
No puede ver**nos**.	*He cannot see us.*
Llám**ele** en seguida.	*Call him at once.*
Mánd**elo** V. a mi casa.	*Send it to my house.*
Sentánd**ome** le miré con sorpresa.	*Seating myself I looked at him with surprise.*
Viéndo**le** venir por la calle . . .	*Seeing him coming along the street . . .*
But: No **le** llame V. ahora.	*Do not call him now.*
No **lo** mande V. hasta mañana.	*Do not send it until to-morrow.*

(*a*) Note in the above examples that accented verb forms retain their accent before appended pronouns; and that the appended pronoun often makes it necessary to write the accent on a verb form, which, without the pronoun, does not require a written accent.

(3) When the infinitive is used with an auxiliary verb, the pronoun object may either precede the auxiliary or be appended to the infinitive:

No quiere venderlo.
No lo quiere vender. } *He does not wish to sell it.*

EXERCISE XIII

castigar, *to punish.*
comida, f., *dinner, meal.*
después, adv., *afterwards;* — **de,** prep., *after.*
duro, m., *dollar.*
naranja, f., *orange.*
tarjeta, f., *card;* — **postal,** *postal card.*
temer, *to fear.*

PHRASES

Me gusta mucho.	*I like it very much.*
Me gustan las manzanas.	*I like (am fond of) apples.*
Nos gusta la música.	*We are fond of music.*
Nos gustan las cerezas.	*We like cherries.*

1. Él nos ama; te amamos; las aman; los amamos. 2. No le temo; él no me teme; los temieron; no nos temían. 3. Háblele

V.; háblanos; no les hable V. ahora; no le hablemos. 4. No queremos comprarlo: no lo podemos comprar porque no tenemos dinero. 5. Nos enseña el francés. 6. Lo enseña a los niños también. 7. Les enseña el español también. 8. El padre no quiere castigar a los niños porque los quiere. 9. Llama a tu madre: quiero hablarle. 10. No; no la llames ahora: le hablaré más tarde. 11. Hábleme V. un poco más despacio. 12. ¿Me entendería V. mejor, si le hablase en inglés? 13. Si quiere verme, que pase. 14. Niños, ¿os gustan las naranjas? — Sí, nos gustan muchísimo. 15. Os compraré algunas, pero no las comáis ahora. 16. ¿Cuándo podemos comerlas? — Podéis comerlas después de la comida. 17. Juan, préstame un duro, si lo tienes. — Con mucho gusto; te prestaré dos, si los quieres. 18. Escríbame V. a menudo, y mándeme muchas tarjetas postales. 19. No puedo escribirte, pero te puedo mandar tarjetas.

1. I am calling him; he is calling me; we are calling them; they are calling us. 2. We cannot see them; they cannot see us; he cannot see me. 3. Buy it, if you wish, but do not buy it to-day. 4. Let us not fear him; he is a good man. 5. Your mother is calling you: answer her. 6. Here are some oranges; are you fond of them? 7. Yes; I am very fond of them. 8. I am not listening to it. 9. Who teaches you Spanish? 10. Mr. García teaches us Spanish. He also teaches us French. 11. He sends us many postal cards from Paris. 12. John is a bad boy; the teacher punished him yesterday. 13. When he speaks to you, answer him. 14. Mr. López sold me this hat: he sells them very cheap. 15. Can you see him now? 16. No, but I can see him after (the) dinner. 17. The house is very pretty. We will buy it, if it is not too dear. 18. Madame, are you the mother of this boy? — Yes, sir; I am. 19. He is not a soldier now, but he is going to be.

LESSON XIV

50. Prepositional Forms. — The following forms of the personal pronouns are used after prepositions:

Singular			Plural	
1st. pers.	**mí,**	*me.*	**nosotros, –as,**	*us.*
2nd. pers.	**ti,**	*thee.*	**vosotros, –as,**	*you.*
3rd. pers.	**usted,**	*you.*	**ustedes,**	*you.*
	él,	*him, it.*	**ellos,**	*them.*
	ella,	*her, it.*	**ellas,**	*them.*
	ello,	*it.*		

(1) With the preposition **con**, '*with*', **mí** and **ti** become **conmigo** and **contigo**:

No quiero ir **contigo.**	*I do not wish to go with you.*
¿Quién quiere hablar **conmigo?**	*Who wishes to speak with me?*

51. Relative Position of Two Object Pronouns. — If there are two object pronouns, the indirect object always precedes the direct, whether before or after the verb:

Me los vende muy baratos.	*He sells them to me very cheap.*
Te lo prometo.	*I promise it to you.*
Cómpre**melo.**	*Buy it* (*from* or *for me*).
No puedo vendér**telo.**	*I cannot sell it to you.*

(1) If the direct object is in the first or second person, the indirect object takes the prepositional form preceded by the preposition **a**:

Me presentó **a ella.**	*He presented me to her.*
¿Quién **te** presentó **a mí?**	*Who introduced you to me?*

52. *Se* for *Le* or *Les*. When there are two object pronouns, both in the third person, **se** is substituted for the indirect object, either singular or plural, thus:

le le becomes **se le.**	**le los** becomes **se los.**
les le " **se le.**	**les los** " **se los.**
le la becomes **se la.**	**le las** becomes **se las.**
les la " **se la.**	**les las** " **se las.**
le lo becomes **se lo.**	
les lo " **se lo.**	

53. Expletive Construction. — Since **le** may mean '*to him*', '*to her*', '*to it*,' '*to you*', and **les,** '*to them*' (masc. and fem.), '*to you*' (plur.), it is evident that ambiguity would often arise from the use of **se** representing both **le** and **les.** Where necessary to avoid ambiguity, the prepositional form of the pronoun represented by **se** in a given sentence is also used either before or after the verb, preceded by the preposition **a**:

Se lo doy a	**él**	*I give it to*	*him*
	ella		*her*
	usted		*you*
	ellos		*them*
	ellas		*them*
	ustedes		*you*

(1) This double object is used with other pronouns, and with nouns as well, to produce the emphasis indicated in English by vocal stress:

A mí me parece.	It seems to *me.*
Me parece que **a V.** le gustaría.	I think that *you* would like it.
Al bueno Dios le da larga vida.	God gives the *good man* long life.
A los Españoles nos gusta charlar.	*We Spaniards* like to gossip.

(2) With **usted** three constructions are permissible: (1) The redundant construction, **le** or **la** with the prepositional **a V.,** is the most formal; (2) **a V.,** without an objective form, is less formal; (3) the objective form alone, is least formal:

Le participamos **a V.** Participamos **a V.** **Le** participamos.	*We (beg to) inform you.*

EXERCISE XIV

antes que, *rather than.*
cartero, m., *postman.*
conocer, *to know, become acquainted with.*
contar, *to tell, relate.*
dé, pres. subj. of **dar,** cf. 142.
desagradable, *disagreeable.*
devolver, *to return, give back.*
enseñar, *to show.*
ese, m., **esa,** f., *that.*
esta noche, f., *to-night.*
historia, f., *story.*
ofender, *to offend.*
paquete, m., *package.*
para, *for.*
señorita, f., *young lady, Miss.*
siempre que, *whenever.*
teatro, m., *theater.*

1. Señor, quiero ir al teatro con V. esta noche. — Bueno, puede V. venir conmigo. 2. No quiere trabajar ni con él ni con ella. 3. Cartero, ¿tiene V. algo para mí? — Sí, señor; tengo una carta para V. 4. ¿Es este paquete para mí o para mi hermano? 5. No es para V. ni para él; es para nosotros. 6. Siempre que le veo me habla de VV. 7. Le creo a él antes que a V. 8. No hablemos más de ello; es muy desagradable. 9. ¿Pueden VV. prestarnos cien duros? — No se los podemos prestar a VV. 10. Si Vds. me los prestan, se los devolveré el mes que viene. 11. ¿Quién le contó a V. la historia? — Unos señores me la contaron en el café. 12. Venda V. su casa, si quiere, pero no se la venda V. a ese hombre. 13. Enséñanos tu traje nuevo. — No puedo enseñároslo hoy; os lo enseñaré mañana. 14. ¿Quiere V. mandar este paquete a mi hermano? — Sí; se lo mandaré tan pronto como posible. 15. ¿Cuándo puede V. mandárselo? — Se lo puedo mandar mañana por la tarde. 16. Si V. tiene mi pluma, démela. 17. Los muchachos quieren sus sombreros; déselos V. 18. Me presentó a ella ayer. 19. Don Antonio, le presento a mi hermana. — Tengo mucho gusto en conocerla a V., señorita. 20. Si viene una carta para mí, mándemela V. esta noche. 21. Si le ofende V. a él, me ofende a mí.

1. Were they talking of me? — No, they were talking of them. 2. He talked to me about it yesterday. 3. He does not want

to go with you, he wants to come with us. 4. Here comes a man who wishes to speak with him. 5. He cannot speak with him now. 6. The postman has a letter for me and a package for her. 7. Has he anything for my father? — He has a letter for him, too. 8. Give it to me; I will send it to him. 9. Can you go to the theater with me to-night, Carlos? 10. No, I cannot go with you (*ti*). 11. Lend me your pen. — I lent it to you yesterday and you did not return it to me. 12. I returned it to you last night. 13. I cannot lend it to you because I haven't it. 14. The boys want some apples; do not give them to them. 15. I presented you to him last night in the café. 16. Madame, we have some new hats. I will show them to you. 17. I think you will like them. 18. Whenever we see[1] them, they ask about[2] you. 19. Children, who told you that story? — Mary told it to us. 20. Here are some oranges for the children; give them to them.

[1] Cf. 156. [2] *por.*

LESSON XV

REVIEW OF REGULAR VERBS

54. Regular verbs are verbs conjugated like one of the type-verbs of the three conjugations. To this class may be added verbs which deviate from the regular verbs (1) by orthographical peculiarities resulting from the general mode of spelling, or (2) by certain phonetic variations affecting regularly the root.

NOTE. — Some grammars classify as irregular all verbs with regularly recurring phonetic changes. The question is purely one of practical convenience.

55. Principal Parts. — The infinitive, present indicative, preterite, gerund, and participle may serve as the principal parts of verbs, and from these all other forms may be conveniently derived.

The method of derivation is illustrated below by **comprar** for the first conjugation, **comer** for the second, and **vivir** for the third. The heavy type endings are those regularly added to

the root (**compr–, com–, viv–**), or, in the future and conditional indicative, to the whole infinitive.

I

	Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Pret.	Gerund.	P. Part.
Prin. parts	comprar	compro	compré	comprando	comprado

	Fut.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
Derived parts	compraré	compraba	comprase
	Cond. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
	compraría	compre	comprara
	Impv.		Fut. Subj.
	compra comprad		comprare

II

	Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Pret.	Gerund.	P. Part.
Prin. parts	comer	como	comí	comiendo	comido

	Fut.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
Derived parts	comeré	comía	comiese
	Cond. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
	comería	coma	comiera
	Impv.		Fut. Subj.
	come comed		comiere

III

	Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Pret.	Gerund.	P. Part
Prin. parts	vivir	vivo	viví	viviendo	vivido

	Fut.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
Derived parts	viviré	vivía	viviese
	Cond. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
	viviría	viva	viviera
	Impv.		Fut. Subj.
	vive vivid		viviere

I	II	III
comprar	**comer**	**vivir**

INFINITIVE GROUP

Future Indicative

compraré, *I shall buy.*	comeré, *I shall eat.*	viviré, *I shall live.*
comprarás	comerás	vivirás
comprará	comerá	vivirá
compraremos	comeremos	viviremos
compraréis	comeréis	viviréis
comprarán	comerán	vivirán

Conditional Indicative

compraría, *I should buy.*	comería, *I should eat.*	viviría, *I should live.*
comprarías	comerías	vivirías
compraría	comería	viviría
compraríamos	comeríamos	viviríamos
compraríais	comeríais	viviríais
comprarían	comerían	vivirían

PRESENT GROUP

Present Indicative

compro, *I buy, am buying.*	como, *I eat, am eating.*	vivo, *I live, am living*
compras	comes	vives
compra	come	vive
compramos	comemos	vivimos
compráis	coméis	vivís
compran	comen	viven

Imperfect Indicative

compraba, *I was buying.*	comía, *I was eating.*	vivía, *I was living.*
comprabas	comías	vivías
compraba	comía	vivía
comprábamos	comíamos	vivíamos
comprabais	comíais	vivíais
compraban	comían	vivían

Present Subjunctive

compre, *I may buy.*	coma, *I may eat.*	viva, *I may live.*
compres	comas	vivas
compre	coma	viva
compremos	comamos	vivamos
compréis	comáis	viváis
compren	coman	vivan

Imperative

compra, *buy.*	come, *eat.*	vive, *live.*
comprad	comed	vivid

PRETERITE GROUP

Preterite

compré, *I bought.*	comí, *I ate.*	viví, *I lived*
compraste	comiste	viviste
compró	comió	vivió
compramos	comimos	vivimos
comprasteis	comisteis	vivisteis
compraron	comieron	vivieron

Imperfect Subjunctive

comprase, *I might buy.*	comiese, *I might eat.*	viviese, *I might live.*
comprases	comieses	vivieses
comprase	comiese	viviese
comprásemos	comiésemos	viviésemos
compraseis	comieseis	vivieseis
comprasen	comiesen	viviesen

Conditional Subjunctive

comprara, *I should buy.*	comiera, *I should eat.*	viviera, *I should live.*
compraras	comieras	vivieras
comprara	comiera	viviera
compráramos	comiéramos	viviéramos
comprarais	comierais	vivierais
compraran	comieran	vivieran

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

comprare, *I may buy.*	comiere, *I may eat.*	viviere, *I may live.*
comprares	comieres	vivieres
comprare	comiere	viviere
compráremos	comiéremos	viviéremos
comprareis	comiereis	viviereis
compraren	comieren	vivieren

GERUND

comprando, *buying.*	comiendo, *eating.*	viviendo, *living.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

comprado, *bought.*	comido, *eaten.*	vivido, *lived.*

NOTE 1. — Two verbs of the second conjugation, otherwise regular, have besides their regular participles, a second irregular form:

INFINITIVE	REG. PART.	IRREG. PART.
prender, *to catch, seize.*	prendido,	preso.
romper, *to break.*	rompido,	roto.

NOTE 2. — Four verbs of the third conjugation, otherwise regular, have irregular past participles:

INF.	PART.	INF.	PART.
abrir, *to open,*	abierto.	escribir, *to write,*	escrito.
cubrir *to cover,*	cubierto.	imprimir, *to print,*	impreso.

EXERCISE XV

1. Ella habla francés. 2. Él trabajaba bien. 3. Preguntan por V. 4. No le contesto. 5. Aman a sus amigos. 6. Comieron carne. 7. Le escribí a V. ayer. 8. Te lo contaré mañana. 9. Bebimos agua. 10. ¿Me prestarás tu libro? 11. Te lo prestaré con mucho gusto. 12. Antes vivíamos en esa ciudad. 13.

Llegarán pasado mañana. 14. Desearía hablar con V. 15. Háble me V.; yo le escucho. 16. Tomamos lecciones de español. 17. ¿Quién se lo enseña a VV.? 18. Ellos nos olvidan, pero nosotros no los olvidamos a ellos. 19. ¿Qué buscaba V.? 20. Buscaba mi sombrero. 21. Lo hallará V. en la alcoba. 22. No viajamos mucho. 23. Comed estas peras; las hallaréis muy buenas. 24. Gastan mucho, pero ganan más. 25. Aprended bien las palabras. 26. Recibimos ayer tu carta. 27. Lleve V. este paquete a mi madre. 28. Bajemos a la cocina. 29. Me contó una historia. 30. Nos lo enseñó. 31. No le ofendas. 32. Visitamos a nuestros tíos. 33. Si V. llamase a la puerta, ellos la abrirían. 34. Si estudiásemos bien, aprenderíamos pronto. 35. Si comiesen más despacio, no comerían tanto.

ORAL. — *Give the principal parts of:* 1. Tomar, bajar. 2. Beber, ofender, aprender. 3. Recibir, escribir, abrir.

Identify and translate the following, giving as many meanings as possible: 1. Hablo, vivo, como; hable, coma, viva. 2. Habla, vende, vive; halló, vendió, comió. 3. Bajaba, vivía, aprendería; conté, viví, escribí. 4. Olvidaré, aprenderé, recibiré; olvidare, aprendiera, recibiera. 5. Amamos, amemos, comamos, comemos, comimos. 6. Habláremos, hablaremos, venderé, vendiera. 7. Vendéis, vendáis, vivís, viváis. 8. Estudiaron, estudiaran, estudiarán. 9. Viviste, vendiste, enseñaste.

1. We were working in the garden. 2. What are you eating? 3. Do not drink (of) this water. 4. We shall arrive the day after to-morrow. 5. He talked with us. 6. Do not speak to me. 7. I will not listen to you. 8. Do you know this man? — No, I do not know[1] him. 9. Did you write to your father? 10. I wrote to him yesterday. 11. Do not forget me. 12. You will find your book in the library. 13. When did he arrive? 14. Let us not work to-day. 15. Would you study French, if I should teach it to you? 16. Children, eat more slowly. 17. I cannot

look for it now. 18. We shall find it to-morrow. 19. He earns a great deal, but he spends more. 20. Let us talk about it. 21. Let us sell it to him. 22. Ask him if he lives here. 23. Formerly we took French lessons; now we are studying Spanish. 24. Whom are you seeking? 25. I was looking for my sister. 26. Did you find her? 27. Yes, I found her in the garden.

[1] Cf. 56, 3 (*a*).

LESSON XVI

56. Regular Verbs with Orthographical Change. — A number of verbs, otherwise regular, are characterized by orthographical changes which are rendered necessary by the fact that certain consonants vary in pronunciation, according as they are followed by different vowels.

(1) Verbs ending in **car, gar,** and **zar** in the infinitive change **c, g,** and **z** to **qu, gu,** and **c** respectively before endings in **e**: i.e., throughout the present subjunctive and in the first person singular of the preterite. Other forms are regular.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Preterite
buscar, *to seek for:*	busco	busque	busqué
	buscas	busques	buscaste
	busca, *etc.*	busque, *etc.*	buscó, *etc.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Preterite
pagar, *to pay:*	pago	pague	pagué
	pagas	pagues	pagaste
	paga, *etc.*	pague, *etc.*	pagó, *etc.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Preterite
rezar, *to pray:*	rezo	rece	recé
	rezas	reces	rezaste
	reza, *etc.*	rece, *etc.*	rezó, *etc.*

(2) Verbs ending in **ger** and **gir** in the infinitive change the **g** to **j** when it is followed by **o** or **a**: i.e., in the first person singular of the present indicative and throughout the present subjunctive. Other forms are regular.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
coger, *to catch, take hold of:*	cojo	coja
	coges	cojas
	coge, *etc.*	coja, *etc.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
exigir, *to demand:*	exijo	exija
	exiges	exijas
	exige, *etc.*	exija, *etc.*

(3) Verbs ending in **cer** and **cir,** preceded by a consonant, change the **c** to **z** when it is followed by **o** or **a**: i.e., in the first person singular of the present indicative and throughout the present subjunctive. Other forms are regular.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
vencer, *to conquer:*	venzo	venza
	vences	venzas
	vence, *etc.*	venza, *etc.*

(*a*) Verbs in **cer** and **cir,** preceded by a vowel, change **c** to **zc** before **o** or **a**: i.e., in the first person singular of the present indicative and throughout the present subjunctive.

conocer, *to know*		**lucir,** *to shine*	
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
conozco	conozca	luzco	luzca
conoces	conozcas	luces	luzcas
conoce, *etc.*	conozca, *etc.*	luce, *etc.*	luzca, *etc.*

(4) Spanish orthography does not permit unaccented **i** to come between vowels. In all cases where this would occur the **i** is changed to **y**.

	Preterite	Past Subj.	Gerund
leer, *to read:*	leí	Impf. leyese	leyendo
	leíste	Cond. leyera	
	leyó	Fut. leyere	
3rd plur.	leyeron		

(5) Verbs of the second and third conjugations with stems ending in **ll** and **ñ** lose the **i** of the diphthongal endings: i. e., in the third singular and plural of the preterite, through the imperfect, conditional, and future subjunctives, and in the gerund.

	Preterite	Past Subj.	Gerund
bullir, *to boil:*	bullí	Impf. bullese	bullendo
	bulliste	Cond. bullera	
	bulló	Fut. bullere	
3rd plur.	bulleron		

	Preterite	Past Subj.	Gerund
tañer, *to play a musical instrument:*	tañí	Impf. tañese	tañendo
	tañiste	Cond. tañera	
	tañó	Fut. tañere	
3rd plur.	tañeron		

(6) Many verbs ending in **iar** and **uar** bear the accent on the **i** or **u** before unaccented endings beginning with a vowel.

variar, *to vary*		**continuar,** *to continue*	
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
varío	varíe	continúo	continúe
varías	varíes	continúas	continúes
varía	varíe	continúa	continúe

		PLURAL	
variamos	variemos	continuamos	continuemos
variáis	variéis	continuáis	continuéis
varían	varíen	continúan	continúen
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
varía	variad	continúa	continuad

(7) Verbs in **guir** and **quir** drop the **u** before the endings **o** and **a**. The **q** becomes **c** in these cases:

distinguir, *to distinguish*		**delinquir,** *to offend*	
PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
distingo	distinga	delinco	delinca
distingues	distingas	delinques	delincas
distingue, *etc.*	distinga, *etc.*	delinque, *etc.*	delinca, *etc.*

(8) Verbs ending in **guar** require the dieresis on the **u** before ending in **e**, to prevent its becoming mute.

	PRES. SUBJ.	PRETERITE
averiguar, *to ascertain:*	averigüe	averigüé
	averigües	averiguaste
	averigüe, *etc.*	averiguó, *etc.*

EXERCISE XVI

agradecer, *to thank, be thankful for.*
antes de ayer, *the day before yesterday.*
bolsillo, m., *pocket.*
cuenta, f., *bill.*
deber, *to owe, ought.*
deseo, m., *desire, wish.*
enemigo, m., *enemy.*
enfermo, –a, *sick.*
entre, *between.*
entregar, *to deliver, hand over.*
escoger, *to choose, select.*
nido, m., *nest.*
pájaro, m., *bird.*
periódico, m., *newspaper.*
sacar, *to take out.*
salir, *to go out, leave.*
siguiente, *following.*
trabajo, m., *work.*
vez, f., *time;* **otra,** — *again.*

1. Busqué a mi criado, pero no le hallé. 2. ¿Porqué me presenta V. está cuenta otra vez? La pagué antes de ayer. 3. No, señor; V. no la pagó; páguemela ahora. 4. No toquemos más el piano. 5. Saqué la carta de mi bolsillo y la leí. 6. Niño, no cójas los pájaros, ni toques sus nidos. 7. Si este libro no le gusta a V., escoja otro. 8. Juan, no le exijas tanto al pobre. — Le exijo sólo lo que me debe. 9. Señora, V. no me conoce a mí y yo no la conozco a V. 10. Agradezcamos a nuestros amigos sus buenos deseos. 11. Distingamos entre lo bueno y lo malo. 12. Ella leyó el periódico y me lo entregó. 13. Llegué a Londres por la mañana, y salí al día siguiente para París. 14. Que continúe su trabajo y lo termine pronto. 15. Venzamos al enemigo o él nos vencerá a nosotros. 16. Recemos por el enfermo. 17. Yo le conté la historia, pero él no la creyó. 18. Leyeron todos los periódicos.

1. I paid all my bills the day before yesterday. 2. Do they not like this room? Let them choose another. 3. Children, do not play the piano now. 4. I arrived here last night. 5. Pray for me. 6. Distinguish the useful from the beautiful. 7. Do you know me? — No, sir; I do not know you, but I know your friend. 8. I thank you for your good wishes. 9. They are demanding all that we have. Let us conquer them. 10. Let us finish our work as soon as possible. 11. Do not look for the books; I see[1] them. 12. I took the money from my pocket and paid the bill. 13. They read all the books they had and turned them over to us. 14. Let us now continue our Spanish lesson. 15. If you do not find it in the dining room, look for it in my room. 16. Let us catch the bird. 17. Demand only what you need. 18. We found the children seeking the birds' nests. 19. Let him finish the work before dinner.

[1] Cf. 156.

LESSON XVII

57. No is the most frequent negative in Spanish. Its use with verbs has already been noted. Some further points are to be noticed: —

(1) Although **no** usually stands before the verb, it may stand before any word which is to be made negative:

No me contó los detalles.	*He did not tell me the details.*
Me contó unos detalles **no** importantes.	*He told me some unimportant details.*

(2) When **no** is used without a verb, it may stand either before or after the word to be made negative, but is usually placed after it:

¿Lo cree V.? Yo **no.**	*Do you believe it? I do not.*
Todavía **no.**	*Not yet.*
Ahora **no.**	*Not now.*

58. Nunca and Jamás, both of which mean '*never*', may stand after the verb, before the verb, or alone:

(1) If they are placed before the verb, or stand alone, no further negative is required:

Nunca bebo vino.	*I never drink wine.*
¿Bebe V. vino? **Nunca.**	*Do you drink wine? Never.*

(2) If they are placed after the verb, **no** or some other negative must stand before the verb:

No bebo vino **nunca.**	*I never drink wine.*
No fumo **jamás** antes de comer.	*I never smoke before eating.*

(3) When **nunca** and **jamás** follow the verb without a preceding negative, they have the positive value '*ever*':

¿Vió V. **jamás** tal cosa? *Did you ever see such a thing?*
Importa ahora más que **nunca**. *It is more important now than ever.*

59. Ni . . . Ni, '*neither . . . nor*', have the same construction as **nunca** and **jamás.**

(1) **Ni** is often a strong negative, equivalent to '*not even*':

No me dió **ni** una. *He did not give me a single one.*

60. Nadie, '*nobody*', **Nada,** '*nothing*', and **Ninguno, -a,** '*none*', '*no*', have the same construction as **nunca** and **jamás:**

No veo a **nadie.** / **A nadie** veo. — *I see nobody.*
¿Quién viene? **Nadie.** — *Who is coming? Nobody.*

No comió **nada.** / **Nada** comió. — *He ate nothing.*
¿Qué comió? **Nada.** — *What did he eat? Nothing.*

No tengo **ningún** libro. / **Ningún** libro tengo. — *I have no book.*
¿Qué libro tiene V.? **Ninguno.** — *What book have you? (I have) none.*

NOTE. — For the loss of the final **o** of **ninguno** (cf. 126).

61. Tampoco, '*as little*', is equivalent to '*neither*' before a verb, and to '*either*' after a negative:

Tampoco quiero ese libro. *Neither do I want that book.*
No quiero ese libro **tampoco.** *I do not want that book either.*

(1) After a simple negative a second negative answer is expressed by **tampoco,** which then has the meaning of '*not . . . . either*':

¿Le dió V. de comer? No. — *Did you give him anything to eat?*
¿De beber? **Tampoco.** — *No. To drink? No.*
¿Quiere V. este libro? No. — *Do you want this book? No. This*
¿Éste? **Tampoco.** — *one? No.*
¡Tú no vas! ¡Ni yo **tampoco!** — *You shall not go. Nor I either.*

62. Pero, mas and **sino** all mean '*but*'. **Mas** differs from **pero** only in being a more formal and literary form. **Sino** is used only in an affirmative clause to emphasize a contrast with a preceding negation:

No es Americano, **sino** Inglés.	*He is not an American, but an Englishman.*
Me fuí, no a la iglesia, **sino** al café.	*I went, not to the church, but to the café.*

NOTE. — **No . . . sino** means '*only*':

No vivo **sino** para ella.	*I live only for her.*

63. No . . . ya or **Ya . . . no,** used with a verb, means '*no more*', '*no longer*':

Ya no fumo.	*I do not smoke any more.*

64. The following adverbs of place are to be noticed:

WITH VERBS OF REST	WITH VERBS OF MOTION
aquí, *here* (near me).	**acá,** *here* (toward me).
ahí, *there* (near you).	**ahí,** *there* (toward you).
allí, *there* (distant from both).	**allá,** *there* (in that direction).

Aquí tiene V. su sombrero.	*Here is your hat.*
Ven **acá.**	*Come here.*
¿Qué tiene V. **ahí**?	*What have you there?*
Vive **allí** en aquella casa.	*He lives there in that house.*
Allá voy.	*I am going there.*

NOTE. — By many writers the distinction between forms used with verbs of rest and those used with verbs of motion is not strictly observed.

(1) **Por aquí, por ahí,** and **por allí** mean '*around here*', '*around there*', or '*this way*', '*that way*':

¿Hay una botica **por aquí** cerca?	*Is there a drug store about here?*
Venga V. **por aquí.**	*Come this way.*
¿Se va **por allí** al museo?	*Do you go that way to the museum?*

EXERCISE XVII

acompañar, *to accompany.*
alegre, *cheerful, merry.*
aquel, *that.*
bastante, *rather, quite.*
caja, f., *box.*
cuanto, a, *all that.*
desde, *from.*
en seguida, *at once.*
enviar, *to send.*
extraordinario, –a, *extraordinary.*
gracia, f., *charm.*
hasta, *to, up to, as far as.*
influencia, f., *influence.*
interesante, *interesting.*
papel, m., *paper.*
primero, *first.*
pues, *well, why.*
rato, m., *while.*
saludar, *to greet, salute, speak to.*
ve, 3rd sing., pres. indic. of **ver**, *to see* (cf. 156).
vi, vió, 1st and 3rd sing. pret. of **ver**.

1. Él fuma mucho: yo no. 2. ¿Van VV. a casa? — Ahora no: vamos primero a la iglesia. 3. ¿Lo concluirá mañana? — Mañana no, pero muy pronto. 4. Ella canta no sin cierta gracia, pero no tiene una voz extraordinaria. 5. ¿Vió V. jamás una cosa tan hermosa? — Nunca. — Yo tampoco. 6. Jamás me creería, si yo se lo contara. 7. Nunca le vi tan alegre como aquel día. 8. Él me saluda siempre que me ve; yo no le contesto nunca. 9. Nada tengo y nada quiero. 10. No como nada por la mañana. 11. Nadie me quiere y yo no quiero a nadie. 12. Ningún periódico tiene más influencia que éste. 13. No quiero ningún dinero: tengo cuanto necesito. 14. Me contaron cosas interesantes pero no muy importantes. 15. Tampoco compraré este sombrero: es muy caro y no es muy bonito. 16. ¿Va V. con nosotros? — No. — ¿Y Juan? — Tampoco. 17. Tú no entrarás ahí. — Ni tú tampoco. 18. Venga V. acá en seguida; hablaremos un rato. 19. ¿No hallas los papeles? Pues los dejé ahí en esa caja. 20. VV. me acompañarán hasta allí, ¿no es verdad? 21. ¿Va él a la ciudad? — Sí, va allá esta mañana. Tiene allí un hermano bastante enfermo. 22. Nos escribirá desde allí. 23. Voy a enviar allá a un criado por un periódico. 24. No leyó el libro que le presté, sino otro que halló muy interesante. 25. No vienen ya por la mañana, sino por la tarde.

1. Are we going to their uncle's now? — Not yet; we are going first to my cousin's. 2. Did you buy them all? — Not all; I left one for you. 3. He told me one thing which,[1] although not very important, is very interesting. 4. Did you ever see such[7] a beautiful horse? — Never. 5. He never drinks coffee, although he likes it very much. 6. Eggs and butter are now dearer than ever. 7. No man works more than he, but he earns very little. 8. We will buy no fruit this year; it is too dear. 9. He has no influence in this country. 10. They do not like this house either. 11. Mary will[2] not study; neither will[2] she read the books that I buy for her. 12. Do you wish a glass of water? — No. — A cup of coffee? — No. 13. I see that you have there a very fine garden. 14. He starts[3] for London to-morrow. He will send us some newspapers from there. 15. The train leaves[4] here in the morning and arrives there in the evening. 16. Go in this way. You will find them there in the salon. 17. They called to us from up there.[5] 18. I am going in there to look for them. 19. John! come here at once. 20. I found no one there; not even[6] the servant. 21. What have you there? — Nothing. 22. No, no one called you. 23. Do you need anything? — Nothing, thank you.

[1] Use *la que.* [2] *quiere.* [3] *sale.* [4] *sale de.* [5] *allá arriba.* [6] *ni aún.* [7] *tan.*

LESSON XVIII

65. Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs *Ser* and *Estar,* both meaning *'to be':*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
ser	**soy**	**fuí**	**siendo**	**sido**
	eres	**fuiste**		
Fut.	**es**	**fué**		
seré	**somos**	**fuimos**		
	sois	**fuisteis**		
	son	**fueron**		

COND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.
sería	era	fuese
	eras	
	era	COND. SUBJ.
	éramos	fuera
	erais	
	eran	

	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.
	sea[1]	fuere

	IMPV.
	sé, sed

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
estar	estoy	estuve	estando	estado
	estás	estuviste		
FUT.	está	estuvo		
estaré	estamos	estuvimos		
	estáis	estuvisteis		
	están	estuvieron		

COND.	IMPERF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.
estaría	estaba	estuviese

	PRES. SUBJ.	COND. SUBJ.
	esté	estuviera
	estés	
	esté	
	estemos	
	estéis	
	estén	

	IMPV.	FUT. SUBJ.
	está, estad	estuviere

[1] The full forms of the tenses are not given when the personal endings are added regularly to the first per. sing. form given.

66. Ser and **Estar,** although they have the same meaning in English, are quite distinct in use.

(1) **Ser** is used: —

(*a*) With a substantive predicate:

Soy sastre de oficio.	*I am a tailor by trade.*
Eres un niño.	*You are a child.*
Somos Americanos.	*We are Americans.*
El duque de Rivas **fué** poeta.	*The Duke of Rivas was a poet.*
¿**Es** V.? — Sí; **soy** yo.	*Is it you? Yes, it is I.*

(*b*) In impersonal expressions:

Es tarde, temprano.	*It is late, early.*
Es posible, probable, etc.	*It is possible, probable, etc.*

(*c*) With past participles to form the passive voice (cf. 78):

Es estimado de todos.	*He is esteemed by all.*
Fué conducido a la cárcel.	*He was taken to jail.*

(*d*) Before a prepositional phrase denoting material, origin, ownership, or destination:

La mesa **es** de madera.	*The table is of wood.*
Él **es** de Sevilla.	*He is from Seville.*
El regalo **es** para mi tío.	*The present is for my uncle.*
La finca **es** de mi madre.	*The property is my mother's.*

(*e*) With adjectives which denote inherent, essential, or permanent qualities of the noun modified:

Omero **era** ciego.	*Homer was blind.*
Yo **soy** moreno; él **es** rubio.	*I am dark; he is blond.*
La habitación **era** espaciosa.	*The room was large.*
Su vestido **era** negro.	*His clothing was black.*
La mesa **es** redonda.	*The table is round.*
Es Inglés y protestante.	*He is an Englishman and a Protestant.*

(2) **Estar** is used: —

(*a*) In expressions indicating position:

Está en casa.	*He is at home.*
Méjico **está** en el Nuevo Mundo.	*Mexico is in the new world.*
Mi casa **está** al lado.	*My house is next door.*

(*b*) With gerunds to form continuative tenses:

Estoy escribiendo.	*I am writing.*
Estaba escribiendo.	*I was writing.*

(*c*) With past participles and adjectives denoting accidental or temporary qualities and conditions:

Estaban cansados.	*They were tired.*
Estaba triste.	*He was sad.*
La botella **está** llena.	*The bottle is full.*
El suelo **está** húmedo.	*The ground is damp.*
Estamos solos.	*We are alone.*

(*d*) In questions and statements regarding the health.

¿Cómo **está** V.?	*How are you?*
Bien, gracias. ¿Y V.?	*Well, thank you. How are you?*
¿Está V. mejor?	*Are you better?*
Está malo (enfermo).	*He is sick.*

(3) With many adjectives either **ser** or **estar** may be used; **ser** always indicating that the adjective denotes an essential quality of the noun, and **estar** that the quality is only temporarily or accidentally an attribute of the noun:

Es pálido.	*He is pale* (always so).
Está pálido.	*He is pale* (has turned pale).
Es ciego.	*He is blind.*
Está ciego de cólera.	*He is blind with anger.*
Las calles **están** limpias.	*The streets are clean* (for the present).
Las calles **son** limpias.	*The streets are clean* (always so).

(4) Some adjectives vary in meaning according as they are used with **ser** or **estar**:

ser bueno, *to be good.*	**estar** bueno, *to be well.*
ser malo, *to be bad.*	**estar** malo, *to be sick.*
ser cansado, *to be tiresome.*	**estar** cansado, *to be tired.*

EXERCISE XVIII

así, *thus, so.*
caoba, f., *mahogany.*
cojo, –a, *lame.*
detrás de, *behind.*
entonces, *then, at that time.*
fin, m., *end.*
general, m., *general.*
gusto, a su —, *as you will, at will.*
limpiar, *to clean.*
moderno, –a, *modern.*
paraguas, m., *umbrella.*
resfriado, m., *cold.*
sentado, –a, *seated.*
sobre, *on, upon.*
sucio, –a, *dirty.*

PHRASES

¿Está el señor en casa?	*Is the gentleman at home?*
Está bien.	*It is well, all right.*
¿Es hora de comer?	*Is it dinner time?*
Estar de pie.	*To be standing.*

1. Este vaso es muy hermoso, pero está sucio: límpielo V. 2. Aunque era ciego y cojo, siempre estaba alegre. 3. Era una muchácha bastante bonita, pero estaba entonces muy pálida. 4. La mesa, las sillas, y la cama eran de caoba. 5. Este señor es de Córdoba: es uno de mis mejores amigos. 6. El paquete era para mi padre: lo llevé a casa y se lo entregué. 7. ¿Es de V. aquel paraguas que está detrás de la puerta? — No; es de Juan. 8. ¿Dónde están mis guantes? — Los dejé sobre la mesa. 9. No los veo: estarán en su cuarto. 10. Mi amigo estará ahora en Inglaterra: me escribió que estaría en Londres al fin del mes. 11. Yo estoy bastante bien, pero estoy cansado. 12. ¿Cómo está su esposa? — Ella no está bien: tiene un resfriado. 13. ¿Estuvieron VV. anoche en el Café Francés? — Nunca estuvimos allí. 14. Estos muchachos son muy malos. — Es que los pobres no están bien de salud. 15. Si V. fuera un amigo, no me hablaría así. 16. Sea como Dios quiere. 17. Si yo estuviese bueno, trabajaría en el jardín. 18. Napoleón fué uno de los mejores generales de los tiempos modernos. 19. Aquí tienen VV. el agua caliente. — Está bien: déjela ahí. 20. ¿Es ya hora de ir? —

Todavía no: es muy temprano. 21. Estamos solos; puede V. hablar a su gusto. 22. El maestro está de pie; los discípulos están sentados.

1. Although these gloves are new they are already dirty. 2. Was your uncle at home yesterday? — No, sir; he was in the city. 3. It is early, but let us start.[1] 4. How is your mother? — She is well, thank you, but my sister is ill. 5. The table and chairs are of wood; the bed is of iron. 6. The young woman is not very pretty now because she is ill and very pale. 7. Where did you leave your hat? — It is probably in my room. 8. Where is your sister now? — She is traveling in Europe. 9. If you are tired, do not read. 10. We were always well when we were in the country. 11. Where were you yesterday? — I was at home until quite late. 12. Do you know that man? — Yes, he is from Granada. 13. Although the poor boy is lame, he is always cheerful. 14. When children are ill they are not good. 15. It is dinner time; let us go into the house. 16. How are you to-day? — I am well, thank you. 17. The garden is behind the house. 18. Do not read that book; it is very tiresome. 19. They will be in Paris to-morrow. They will probably write us from there. 20. If I were rich, I should not be here. I should travel for[2] two years. 21. My uncle was seated in a large mahogany chair; the others were standing. 22. Where are the children? — They are in the garden reading. 23. The servants are working in the kitchen.

[1] *salgamos* [2] *por.*

LESSON XIX

67. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Haber*. — There are in Spanish two verbs meaning '*to have*', **haber** and **tener**. **Haber** is used as an auxiliary verb to form perfect tenses and in some idiomatic expressions; never in the sense of '*to possess*'.

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
haber	**he**, *I have*	**hube** *I had*	**habiendo**, *having*	**habido**, *had*
	has	**hubiste**		
FUT.	**ha**	**hubo**		
habré	**hemos**	**hubimos**		
	habéis	**hubisteis**		
COND.	**han**	**hubieron**		
habría				
	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.		
	había	**hubiese**		
	PRES. SUBJ.	COND. SUBJ.		
	haya	**hubiera**		
	IMPV.	FUT. SUBJ.		
	hé habed	**hubiere**		

68. The Perfect Tenses of verbs are formed from the corresponding simple tenses of the verb **haber**, and the past participle of the verb conjugated. *The past participle of the perfect tenses is invariable.*

(1) Synopsis of the perfect tenses of **comprar**:

Indicative	Subjunctive
PRES. PERF.	PRES. PERF.
he comprado, *I have bought.*	**haya comprado**, *I may have bought.*
PLUPERF.	PLUPERF.
había comprado, *I had bought.*	**hubiese comprado**, *I might have bought.*
PRET. PERF.	COND. PERF.
hube comprado, *I had bought.*	**hubiera comprado**, *I might have bought.*
FUT. PERF.	FUT. PERF.
habré comprado, *I shall have bought.*	**hubiere comprado**, *I should have bought.*

(2) The preterite perfect, the translation of which is the same as that of the pluperfect, is used only after temporal conjunctions to designate a time previous to that of another past tense:

Cuando me **hube cerciorado** de que no estaba muerto, me marché.	*When I had ascertained that he was not dead, I left.*
Apenas se **hubo vestido,** cuando oyó que llamaban a la puerta.	*He had scarcely dressed when he heard knocking at the door.*

(3) In the conclusion of a past condition contrary to the fact the conditional perfect subjunctive is usual instead of the conditional perfect indicative:

Si me hubiesen visto, me **hubieran llamado.**	*If they had seen me, they would have called me.*

69. Idiomatic Uses of *Haber.*

(1) Impersonal Use. The third person singular of all tenses, the infinitive, and the gerund of the verb **haber** are used impersonally with the meanings of equivalent forms of the English expression '*there is*', '*there are*'. In this use the third person singular of the present indicative has the irregular form **hay:**

Pres. Ind.	Impf. Ind.
hay, *there is, there are.*	**había,** *there was, there were.*
Preterite	**Future**
hubo, *there was, there were.*	**habrá,** *there will be.*

Conditional

habría, *there would be,* etc.

Hay bonitas flores en el jardín.	*There are pretty flowers in the garden.*
Había un jardín detrás de la casa.	*There was a garden behind the house.*
Hubo una breve pausa.	*There was a short pause.*
Habrá mucha fruta este año.	*There will be much fruit this year.*

(*a*) These forms may have a pronoun object which is either not translated, or translated by '*some*' or '*any*':

¿**Hay** vino en la casa? Sí, **lo hay.**	*Is there wine in the house? Yes, there is.*
Las flores eran el encanto del jardín.	*The flowers were the charm of the garden.*
Las había de todos los países.	*There were some from all countries.*

(2) The various tenses of **haber** in the impersonal use, followed by **que** and an infinitive, express impersonally obligation or necessity:

Hay que trabajar para vivir.	*One must work to live.*
Habrá que contar con él.	*He must be reckoned with.*

(3) **Haber de** followed by an infinitive expresses futurity or obligation:

Ha de bailar ahora.	*He must dance now.*
Si he de ser franco. [bre?	*If I must be frank.*
¿Había yo de casarme con un po-	*Was I to marry a poor man?*
¿Quién **había de** esperarlo de él?	*Who would have expected it of him?*

(4) **Hé,** orthographically the same as the imperative of **haber,** is used with the adverbs of place, **aquí, ahí,** and **allí,** to mean '*here is*' and '*there is*'. If the object is a personal pronoun, it is appended to **hé:**

Hé aquí el origen de la visión.	*This is the origin of the vision.*
V. quiere conocer la verdad. **Héla aquí.**	*You wish to know the truth. This is it.*

EXERCISE XIX

acabar, *to finish, end.*
cuadro, m., *picture.*
dicho, –a, pp. of **decir** (cf. 143), *to say.*
eso, *that.*
extranjero, –a, *foreign.*
gente, f., *people, persons.*
motín, m., *riot.*
multitud, f., *crowd.*
ocupado, –a, *occupied, busy.*
profesor, m., *teacher, professor.*
prometer, *to promise.*
vuelto, –a, irreg. p.p. of **volver,** *to return.*

PHRASES

¿Qué hay? [qué.	*What is the matter?*
Muchas gracias. — No hay de	*Many thanks. Don't mention it.*
¿Qué hay de nuevo? — Nada.	*Is there anything new? Nothing.*

1. He estado muy ocupado hoy. He leído todos los periódicos que me han mandado de Madrid. 2. ¿Quién se los ha mandado a V.? — Me los ha mandado un amigo que tengo allí. 3. ¿Ha

tomado V. lecciones de español? — Sí; he estudiado el español mucho. 4. ¿Había estado V. en España antes del año pasado? 5. Hasta entonces nunca había estado en Europa. 6. Cuando hubimos llegado a Madrid, buscamos un profesor de español. 7. ¿Han escrito VV. las cartas? — Todavía no, pero las habremos acabado pronto. 8. ¿Ha abierto V. las ventanas? — Sí; todas están abiertas. 9. ¿Han vuelto a casa sus padres? 10. Cuando salí de casa no habían vuelto todavía, pero ya habrán vuelto. 11. Si los discípulos hubiesen estudiado más, no hubieran olvidado tantas palabras. 12. V. no le habrá entendido bien, señora; no habrá dicho eso. 13. Hemos visitado hoy el museo; nos han gustado mucho los cuadros. 14. Hay muchos que son buenos, pero los hay también que son muy malos. 15. ¿Había mucha gente en el museo? — Sí; había una multitud de extranjeros. 16. Los había de todos los países. El mes que viene habrá aún más. 17. Si los guardias no hubiesen llegado a tiempo, hubiera habido un motín. 18. Enséñenos V. el cuarto en que hemos de vivir. 19. ¿Había yo de trabajar por tan poco dinero? 20. Hé aquí el libro que prometí devolverle hoy.

1. Have you opened the door, John? — No, sir; I will open it at once. 2. We have not written you before because we have not had time. 3. When I had finished the letters, I read what I had written. 4. Have you returned to him the money which he lent you? 5. Not yet; I would have returned it to him before, but my money has not come. 6. Had you traveled in Mexico before last summer? 7. I had never been in Mexico before. 8. There is a fine garden behind our house. 9. There are many flowers and trees in it. 10. Were there many people at the theater last night? 11. No; there were very few, but there will be more to-night. 12. Is there any bread in the house? — There is neither bread nor butter. 13. There are many persons who believe that there will be war between Germany and England. 14. Is there anything new[1] in the newspaper? — Yes; there was

a riot yesterday in the city. 15. When we had read the papers, we put[2] them on the table. 16. What is the matter? — There has been a fire in this house. 17. I thank you for the favor. — Don't mention it. 18. What am I to do? He has not returned yet and it is very late. 19. Here is the money which you lent me. 20. One must eat in order to live.

[1] *algo de nuevo.* [2] Cf. 149.

LESSON XX

70. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Tener*. — Tener means '*to have*', in the sense of '*to hold*' or '*to possess*'.

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Pres. Part.	P. Part.
tener	**tengo**	**tuve**	**teniendo**	**tenido**
	tienes	**tuviste**		
Fut.	**tiene**	**tuvo**		
tendré	**tenemos**	**tuvimos**		
	tenéis	**tuvisteis**		
Cond.	**tienen**	**tuvieron**		
tendría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	tenía	**tuviese**		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	tenga	**tuviera**		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	ten tened	**tuviere**		

(*a*) The verb **tener** is sometimes used with past participles, but only when the verb has a direct object. When so used, it emphasizes the possession of the object, and the past participle agrees with the object in gender and number:

Tengo las cartas escritas.	*I have the letters written.*
Tiene la lámpara encendida.	*He has the lamp lighted.*

1. **Idiomatic uses of *Tener*:**—

(*a*) **Tener que** followed by an infinitive expresses necessity:

Mañana **tengo que** madrugar.	*I have to get up early to-morrow.*
Tenía que llamar muchas veces.	*He had to knock many times.*
Tuvo que ceder a las instancias de su tío.	*He was obliged to yield to the entreaties of his uncle.*
Tendrá que pasar por aquí.	*He will have to pass this way.*

(*b*) **Tener** is used in a number of expressions where in English an adjective is employed with the verb '*to be*':

tener hambre, *to be hungry.*	**tener frío,** *to be cold.*
tener sed, *to be thirsty.*	**tener calor,** *to be warm.*
tener sueño, *to be sleepy.*	**tener envidia,** *to be envious.*
tener razón, *to be right.*	**tener vergüenza,** *to be ashamed.*

NOTE.—**Frío** and **calor** are used with **tener** only with reference to persons. In speaking of things the verb **estar** and the proper adjective are employed:

El agua **está fría** (caliente).	*The water is cold* (*hot*).

71. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Hacer*. — The irregular verb **hacer**, '*to make*', '*do*', is used with a number of idiomatic expressions relating to time and weather.

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	PRES. PART.	P. PART.
hacer	**hago**	**hice**	**haciendo**	**hecho**
FUT.	**haces**	**hiciste**		
haré	**hace**	**hizo**		
	hacemos	**hicimos**		
COND.	**hacéis**	**hicisteis**		
haría	**hacen**	**hicieron**		
	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.		
	hacía	**hiciese**		
	PRES. SUBJ.	COND. SUBJ.		
	haga	**hiciera**		
	IMPV.	FUT. SUBJ.		
	haz haced	**hiciere**		

72. Idiomatic Uses of *Hacer*. — The verb **hacer** is used with nouns of time, to indicate the time when an action took place or from which it dates:

Hace dos días (un mes, un año).	*Two days (a month, a year) ago.*
Hace ya un mes que no le he visto.	*It is now a month since I saw him.*
Hace un mes que lo busco.	*I have been looking for it for a month.*
Se casó **hace** diez años.	*He married ten years ago.*
Se había casado **hacía** diez años.	*He had married ten years before.*

NOTE. — If the time phrase precedes the clause it modifies, the latter is usually introduced by **que**; if the time phrase follows, there is no connective.

(*a*) The tense of **hacer** in these expressions is determined by the period at which the reckoning begins. If the time is reckoned from the present, **hacer** is in the present tense; if the time is reckoned from a point of time already past, or yet to come, **hacer** is in the imperfect or the future:

Hace dos meses que llegué.	*It is* (now) *two months since I arrived.*
Hacía una semana que estábamos allí.	*We had been there* (at that time) *for a week.*
Mañana **hará** dos meses que escribió.	*It will be two months to-morrow since he wrote.*

(*b*) If the action of the verb in the main clause is represented as still going on, at the time when the reckoning begins, the verb is in the same tense as **hacer**:

Hace un mes que estoy aquí.	*I have been here for a month* (and am still here).
Hacía un mes que estaba allí.	*I had been there for a month* (and still [was there).

(1) **Hacer** is used in a number of expressions describing the state of the weather:

¿Qué tiempo hace?	*What is the weather?*
Hace buen (mal) tiempo.	*It is fine (bad) weather.*
Hace calor (frío).	*It is hot (cold).*
Hace sol.	*The sun is shining.*
Hace viento.	*It is windy.*
Hace luna.	*It is moonlight.*

(*a*) The verb **haber** is similarly used in some expressions:

Hay sol.	*The sun is shining.*
Hay luna.	*It is moonlight.*

(*b*) The verb **estar** is also used in stating the condition of the weather:

¿Cómo **está** el tiempo hoy?	*What is the weather to-day?*
Está bueno, agradable, seco, fresco, frío, cálido, pesado.	*It is fine, agreeable, dry, cool, cold, hot, close.*

EXERCISE XX

agradable, *agreeable.*
ayudar, *to help, aid.*
bondad, f., *goodness, kindness.*
doce, *twelve.*
echar, *to pour.*
esperar, *to wait for.*
jugar, *to play.*
llover, *to rain.*
magnífico, –a, *magnificent, superb.*
ocho, *eight.*
quince, *fifteen;* — **días,** *two weeks.*
solamente, *only.*
temperatura, f., *temperature.*
tiempo; a —, *in time.*

PHRASES

¿Qué tiene V.?	*What is the matter with you?*
No tengo nada.	*There is nothing the matter.*
Tengo dolor de cabeza.	*I have a headache.*
Tengo los ojos cansados.	*My eyes are tired.*
¿Me hace V. el favor de . . .	*Will you do me a favor of . . .*

1. No puedo ir contigo. — Tengo que trabajar esta noche. 2. Si él no puede hacerlo solo, tendré que ayudarle. 3. Tuve que comer sin él, porque no llegó a tiempo. 4. Tenían tanto que hacer que no han podido venir hoy. 5. Tengan VV. la bondad de esperarnos aquí; volveremos pronto. 6. No he comido en doce horas y tengo muchísima hambre. 7. Tenían mucha hambre y mucha sed. 8. ¿Quieres un vaso de agua? — No, gracias; no tengo sed. 9. El pobre niño tiene sueño. — Tiene V. razón: ha jugado todo el día y estará cansado. 10. ¿Me hace el favor de darme un vaso? 11. Ahora hágame V. el favor de echarme un poco de agua. 12. ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que su padre está enfermo? 13. Hace ya un mes, pero está mucho mejor ahora. 14. ¿Hace mucho tiempo que V. está en

este pueblo, señor? — Hace solamente quince días. 15. Hace poco que yo llegué también: mañana hará ocho días. 16. Hace dos años que estuve en España. 17. Hacía un año que estaba allí. 18. ¿Cuándo recibió V. mi carta? — La recibí hace dos días. 19. ¿Cómo está el tiempo? — Hace un tiempo magnífico: ha llovido, pero ya hace sol. 20. ¿Tiene V. calor? — Hace aquí una temperatura muy agradable y no tengo ni calor ni frío. 21. Este mes ha hecho mucho calor. 22. No quiero beber de esta agua; está muy fría.

1. They cannot go alone. You will have to go with them. 2. Why did your cousin not accompany you? — He had to work to-day. 3. If he had so much to do, why did you not help him? 4. I would have helped him, if I had not had to be here to-day. 5. Are you hungry? — I am more sleepy than hungry. 6. Take[1] the child to her room; she is tired and sleepy. 7. My cousins have been living in America for two years. 8. We have been traveling in Europe for a year. 9. They left the town three years ago. 10. How long have you lived here? — I have lived here for ten years. 11. He had been here for a month when I arrived. 12. The sun is shining, but it is quite cold. 13. Do me the favor to get me that book. 14. Do not drink that water, if you are very warm. 15. I am not very warm, but I am tired and thirsty. 16. It has been very cool this summer. 17. What is the matter with John? He is very pale. 18. In autumn it is not so warm as in summer. 19. He had a headache yesterday, but there is nothing the matter with him to-day. 20. Be so kind as to pour some wine into this glass. 21. I read that book many years ago. 22. He went out two hours ago and has not yet returned.

[1] Use *llevar*.

LESSON XXI

73. Reflexive Verbs. — A verb is reflexive when it represents an action as affecting either directly or indirectly the subject; i.e., when it has for its direct or indirect object a pronoun referring to the subject.

Many verbs are commonly used reflexively in Spanish, and most transitive verbs may be so used.

74. Reflexive Pronouns. — The pronouns used with reflexive verbs are the object forms of the personal pronouns, except in the third person, which has a single form **se** for both singular and plural.

The prepositional form of **se** is **sí**, which combines with the preposition **con** to form **consigo.**

Singular		Plural	
me,	*myself.*	**nos,**	*ourselves.*
te,	*thyself.*	**os,**	*yourselves.*
se,	*yourself.* / *himself.* / *herself.*	**se,**	*yourselves.* / *themselves.*

Note. — The student should be careful to distinguish between the English intensive and reflexive pronouns which have the same form. The intensive is expressed in Spanish by joining the proper form of **mismo, -a,** to the subject form of the pronoun:

Yo mismo le he visto.	*I saw him myself.*
Ellos mismos lo reconocen.	*They themselves recognize it.*

75. Position. — The rules for the position of reflexive pronouns are the same as those for the position of objective personal pronouns. **Se,** however, precedes all other object pronouns:

Yo me levanto.	*I get up.*
Cállate.	*Be silent.*
No quiere sentar**se.**	*He does not wish to sit down.*
Sentándo**me.**	*Seating myself.*
Él se lo compra.	*He buys it.*

(1) Final **d** of the second person plural of the imperative, and final **s** of the first person plural of the subjunctive used as imperative, are lost before the appended pronoun objects:

Amaos (amad-os).	*Love one another.*
Amémonos (amemos-nos).	*Let us love each other.*

76. Present Indicative and Synopsis of *Lavarse*, *'to wash oneself'*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

yo **me** lavo, *I wash myself.*	nosotros **nos** lavamos, *we wash ourselves.*
tú **te** lavas, *you wash yourself.*	vosotros **os** laváis, *you wash yourselves.*
usted **se** lava, *you wash yourself.*	ustedes **se** lavan, *you wash yourselves.*
él(ella) **se** lava, *he (she) washes himself (herself).*	ellos, –as **se** lavan, *they wash themselves.*

IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.
yo **me** lavaba, *I was washing myself.*	yo **me** lavase, *I might wash myself.*
PRETERITE	COND. SUBJ.
yo **me** lavé, *I washed myself.*	yo **me** lavara, *I might wash myself.*
FUTURE	FUT. SUBJ.
yo **me** lavaré, *I shall wash myself.*	yo **me** lavare, *I should wash myself.*
COND. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
yo **me** lavaría, *I should wash myself.*	yo **me** lave, *I may wash myself.*

IMPERATIVE

lávate, *wash yourself.*	lavémonos, *let us wash ourselves.*
lávese (él), *let him wash himself.*	lavaos, *wash yourselves.*
lávese V., *wash yourself.*	lávense (ellos), *let them wash themselves.*
lávense VV., *wash yourselves.*	

NOTE. — The reflexive verbs are often used in the plural as reciprocals. In this use they may be strengthened by adding **el uno al otro, los unos a los otros,** etc.:

Se alaban (el uno al otro.)	*They praise one another.*

(*a*) A large number of verbs are reflexive in Spanish, but not in English. Among the more common of these are:

acostarse, *to go to bed.*
alegrarse, *to be glad.*
atreverse, *to dare.*
callarse, *to be silent.*
casarse, *to get married.*
enfadarse, *to become angry.*
enojarse, *to become vexed.*
fiarse, *to trust.*
hacerse, *to grow, become.*
levantarse, *to get up.*
pasearse, *to go walking.*
quejarse, *to complain.*
sentarse, *to sit down.*

(*b*) Many verbs have a different meaning according as they are used reflexively or not:

dormir, *to sleep.* — **dormirse,** *to fall asleep.*
engañar, *to deceive.* — **engañarse,** *to deceive oneself, be mistaken.*
llamar, *to call.* — **llamarse,** *to be called, be named.*
marchar, *to walk, go.* — **marcharse,** *to go away, leave.*
morir, *to die.* — **morirse,** *to be dying.*
reír, *to laugh.* — **reírse,** *to laugh at.*

77. The Indirect Reflexive Pronoun. — The indirect object form of the reflexive pronoun is often used to emphasize the fact that the action was performed in the interest of the subject, or to indicate the ownership of the object of the verb:

Ayer **me** encargué un traje. — *I ordered a suit* (for myself) *yesterday.*
Me corté el dedo. — *I cut my finger.*
Se lavó las manos. — *He washed his hands.*

EXERCISE XXI

acercarse, *to approach.*
afeitarse, *to shave.*
apresurarse, *to hasten.*
bañar, *to bathe.*
barba, f., *beard.*
cara, f., *face.*
causa, f., *cause;* **a — de,** *on account of.*
contentarse, *to content oneself.*
dentro de, *within.*
desayunarse, *to breakfast.*
enjugar, *to wipe.*
instante, m., *instant;* **al —,** *instantly.*
jabón, m., *soap.*
paz, f., *peace.*
quitar, *to take off.*
sitio, m., *place.*
sombra, f., *shade.*

subir, *to mount, get in.*
toalla, f., *towel.*
tranquilo, –a, *quiet.*
treinta, *thirty.*
tren, m., *train.*
viajero, m., *traveler.*

PHRASES

¿Cómo se llama V.? — *What is your name?*
Me llamo Alfredo Menéndez. — *My name is Alfred Menéndez.*
Me alegro de saberlo. — *I am glad to know it.*
No se moleste V. — *Do not disturb yourself.*

1. Antes de acostarse, se bañó. 2. Me baño todas las mañanas. 3. Después de vestirme, bajo al comedor a desayunarme. 4. Nos acostamos temprano y nos levantamos bastante tarde. 5. ¿Cuándo se marchan VV.? — Nos marchamos hoy en el tren de la noche. 6. Hace treinta años que mi padre y mi madre se casaron. 7. Mi hermana María se casará dentro de un mes con el señor López. 8. Los viajeros se apresuran a subir al tren para escoger buenos sitios. 9. Lavaos la cara y las manos. Aquí tenéis agua y jabón, y toallas para enjugaros. 10. No puedo dormirme a causa del calor que hace. 11. Quítate el sombrero, hombre; ya estamos en la sombra. 12. Callaos, niños, y estaos tranquilos. 13. Amaos y ayudaos el uno al otro. 14. Levantémonos al instante: se hace tarde. 15. Déjeme V. en paz o me enfado. 16. Contentémonos con poco y siempre seremos felices. 17. Me acerqué a ella y le pregunté cómo se llamaba. 18. Juan, ¿qué estás haciendo? ¿Estás afeitándote? 19. No, señor; no tengo barba todavía, y por eso no necesito afeitarme. 20. Me alegro de verla a V. buena, señora. 21. Conócete a ti mismo. 22. No escucha más que a sí mismo.

1. I got up, washed myself, and hastened to go down to the dining room. 2. I do not know[1] what his name is nor where he lives. 3. If you wish to bathe, do it at once; it is getting late. 4. I bathed this morning; I will only wash my face and hands. 5. Whom did your friend marry? — He married a young lady from London. 6. Let us go to bed now and get up early. 7.

When does your brother go? — He is going to-morrow. 8. Be silent, children, or your father will be angry. 9. I cannot shave myself with this water; it is too cold. 10. Get up, children; it is getting late. 11. Take this chair. — Do not disturb yourself: this chair is very comfortable. 12. What is the matter? — He cut his finger. 13. Let us hasten to dress. I see[2] some friends approaching[3] the house. 14. If I am not mistaken, your name is Sánchez. 15. Let them get up, if they wish to eat with us. 16. Be contented with little and you will be happy. 17. This man is always talking of himself. 18. He approached us and asked us where we lived. 19. We were very glad to see them so happy. 20. I will not sit down: I have been seated all day. 21. The boy has fallen asleep. I am glad, because he was very tired. 22. Do you wish to wash yourself? I will find[4] soap and towels for you.[5] 23. Be seated[6] (*tú*), John, and take off your hat.

[1] *saber* (151). [2] *veo*. [3] Use rel. clause. [4] Use *buscar*. [5] Use indirect object. [6] *sienta*.

LESSON XXII

78. The Passive Voice is formed by combining the various tenses of the verb **ser** with the past participle of the verb. The participle varies in gender and number to agree with the subject.

Pres. Ind.			Impf. Ind.		
soy	amado, –a,	*I am loved*	era	amado, –a,	*I was loved*
eres	amado, –a,	*you are loved*	eras	amado, –a,	*you were loved*
es	amado, –a,	*he is loved*	era	amado, –a,	*he was loved*
somos	amados, –as,	*we are loved*	éramos	amados, –as,	*we were loved*
sois	amados, –as,	*you are loved*	erais	amados, –as,	*you were loved*
son	amados, –as,	*they are loved*	eran	amados, –as,	*they were loved*

Pret.			Pres. Subj.		
fuí	amado, –a,	*I was loved*	sea	amado, –a,	*I may be loved*

Fut.	Impf. Subj.
seré **amado, –a,** *I shall be loved*	fuese **amado, –a,** *I might be loved*
Cond. Ind.	Cond. Subj.
sería **amado, –a,** *I should be loved*	fuera **amado, –a,** *I should be loved*

Fut. Subj.

fuere **amado, –a,** *I shall (may) be loved*

(1) The agent after passive verbs is expressed by **de** or **por**. **Por** is used after verbs expressing physical action; **de** after verbs denoting moral action:

El coche fué tirado **por** dos mulas.	*The carriage was drawn by two mules.*
Era amado **de** toda la familia.	*He was beloved by all the family.*

79. Substitutes for the Passive. — The passive forms are comparatively infrequent in Spanish, except in the past tenses. In their place the third person singular and plural of the reflexive is employed to such an extent as to be practically another form of the passive. The reflexive in this use may be:

(*a*) Personal; i.e., it may have a substantive or a clause as the subject of the reflexive verb. In this case the reflexive pronoun is the real object of the verb and represents the subject:

Aquí **se vende** pan.	*Bread is sold here.*
Esto **se hace** facilmente.	*This is easily done.*
Se dice que se ha muerto.	*It is said that he has died.*

(*b*) Impersonal; that is, without any subject expressed or understood. In this case the reflexive has no force, except as indicating that the verb is passive in force. The verb is always in the third person singular and may take a personal object:

Cuando **se habla** de eso . . .	*When that is spoken of . . .*
Se nos separa de nuestras familias.	*We are separated from our families.*
No **se la ha castigado** nunca.	*She has never been punished.*
A los ladrones **se les lleva** a la cárcel.	*Robbers are taken to jail.*

Note. — When the direct object of an impersonal reflexive is a per-

sonal pronoun of the third person plural, **les** is frequently substituted for **los** and **las.**

(*c*) The reflexive construction is used in Spanish where in English '*you*', '*we*', '*they*', '*people*', are used in an indefinite or general sense, meaning no one in particular.

¿Cómo **se va** al museo?	*How do you go to the museum?*
¿Por dónde **se sale** de aquí?	*How do you get out of here?*
Cuando no **se sabe** la fecha se consulta el calendario.	*When we do not know the date we consult the calendar.*
Se dice en la ciudad . . .	*They (or people) say in the city . . .*
Cuando **se desea** hablar con una persona por teléfono . . .	*When one wishes to speak to a person by telephone . . .*

(*d*) An active verb in the third person plural with an indefinite subject is frequently used as a substitute for the passive.

Temen que haya guerra.	*It is feared there will be war.*
Dicen que habrá crisis.	*It is said that there will be a crisis.*
No **esperan** que viva.	*He is not expected to live.*

80. Por and **Para.** — These two prepositions offer some difficulty because **para** is usually, and **por** often, to be translated by '*for*'. Of the two, **por** has much the wider range of meanings. It means '*through*', '*by*', '*in*', '*at*', as well as '*for*'.

(1) **Por** means '*for*' in the sense of '*in behalf of*', '*in favor of*', '*in return for*', '*out of*', '*because of*', '*during the time of*':

Habla **por** mí.	*He speaks for me* (in my behalf).
Me lo vendieron **por** mil duros.	*They sold it to me for a thousand dollars.*
No lo dije **por** miedo de ofenderle.	*I did not say it for fear of offending him.*
No lo hicimos **por** falta de dinero.	*We did not do it for lack of money.*
Vamos por agua.	*We are going for water.*
Voy a Toledo **por** dos días.	*I am going to Toledo for two days.*

(2) **Para** means '*for*' in the sense of destination, or purpose, aptitude, readiness, '*in comparison with*', '*in proportion to*':

Salen hoy **para** Europa.	*They start to-day for Europe.*

No sirve **para** nada.	*It serves no purpose* (is good for nothing).
Esta carta es **para** usted.	*This letter is for you.*
Una cuchara **para** sopa.	*A soup spoon.*
Estudia **para** médico.	*He is studying to be a physician.*
No es apto **para** este empleo.	*He is not suited for this work.*
Es muy alta **para** su edad.	*She is very tall for her age.*

EXERCISE XXII

abogado, m., *lawyer.*
acabar, *to finish, end;* — **de,** *to have just.*
acero, m., *steel.*
actor, m., *actor.*
agricultura, f., *agriculture.*
amenazar, *to threaten.*
aplaudir, *to applaud.*
ave, f., *bird.*
botica, f., *apothecary's shop.*
carrera, f., *course.*
construir, *to build.*
dividir, *to divide.*
edificio, m., *building.*
emplear, *to use.*
entrada, f., *entrance.*
fábrica, f., *factory.*
herido, –a, *wounded.*
ligero, –a, *light.*
llorar, *to weep, lament.*
medicina, f., *medicine.*
mundo, m., world; **todo el** — *everybody.*
prohibir, *to forbid.*
publicar, *to publish.*
sofá, m., *sofa.*
tranvía, m., *street car.*
usar, *to use.*

PHRASES

Aquí se habla inglés.	*English is spoken here.*
Aquí se cambia dinero.	*(Foreign) money changed here.*
Se alquila.	*For rent (or hire).*
Se necesita una muchacha.	*Wanted, a maid.*
Acaba de salir.	*He has just gone out.*
Acababa de levantarse.	*He had just risen.*

1. El viejo maestro era amado de todos sus discípulos. 2. Este edificio fué construido por un comerciante rico. 3. Los actores fueron muy aplaudidos por el público. 4. El año se divide en doce meses. 5. Antes se empleaban plumas de ave para escribir: ahora se usan plumas de acero. 6. Se acaba[1] de publicar un libro interesante sobre la agricultura. 7. Se pro-

hibe la entrada en esta fábrica. 8. Se prohibe fumar en el tranvía. 9. Se necesita un buen jardinero. 10. Su muerte fué llorada por todo el mundo. 11. Aquella casa que se ve desde aquí es de mi tío. 12. Esto no se puede hacer ahora. 13. Se acostó a la herida en un sofá. 14. Se llamó en seguida al médico. 15. Cuando se sale de casa, se coge un paraguas si amenaza lluvia. 16. ¿A qué hora se come en esta casa? — Se come muy temprano. 17. ¿Se va por aquí al museo del Prado? 18. ¿A dónde va V.? — Voy a la botica por medicina: mi padre está malo. 19. ¿Cuánto has pagado por el traje? — Pagué treinta duros por él. 20. Es un traje ligero para verano. 21. Este muchacho es muy pequeño para su edad: estudia demasiado. 22. Estudia para abogado y la carrera es muy difícil.

[1] *Acabar de* with an infinitive means 'to have just'; the verb in the infin. taking the finite form of *acabar*.

1. He was conquered[1] by his enemies. 2. The robber was conducted[1] to the jail. 3. These books were written[1] by a Frenchman. 4. This boy was punished[2] at school yesterday. 5. The house was sold[2] for $5000. 6. The day is divided[2] into twenty-four hours. 7. Much gold has been found in the United States. 8. Books[3] bought and sold here.[4] 9. There has just been constructed[2] in Barcelona a magnificent building for the school of medicine. 10. Others will be constructed[2] later. 11. The sick man was carried[2] into the house. 12. He was seen[2] to go toward the palace. 13. It cannot be said[2] that a thing is lost[5] when it is known[2] where it is. 14. There is a great deal of smoking[2] in Spain, but the pipe is little used.[2] 15. Valencia is called the garden of Spain. 16. No admittance[2] to this building. 17. How do you enter[2] this building and how do you get out? 18. I thank you for what you have done for me. 19. He spoke for me when all others were silent.[6] 20. Suits for men and boys sold here.[4] 21. This letter was written for me by a friend.

[1] Use pass. [2] Use refl. [3] Place at end. [4] Place at beginning. [5] *perdido*. [6] *callarse*.

LESSON XXIII

There are in Spanish, as in English, possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns. The former modify nouns by indicating the possessor; the latter stand alone as pronouns.

81. Possessive Adjectives. — The possessive adjective has two sets of forms, one used before the noun, the other after it.

	Before a noun		*After a noun*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1st pers.	**mi**	**mis**, *my*	**mío**, –a,	**míos**, –as, *my, of mine*
2nd pers.	**tu**	**tus**, *thy*	**tuyo**, –a,	**tuyos**, –as, *thy, of thine*
3rd pers.	**su**	**sus**, *your*	**suyo**, –a,	**suyos**, –as, *your, of yours*
	su	**sus**, *his*	**suyo**, –a,	**suyos**, –as, *his, of his*
	su	**sus**, *her*	**suyo**, –a,	**suyos**, –as, *her, of hers*
1st pers.	**nuestro**, –a, –os, –as, *our, of ours*			
2nd pers.	**vuestro**, –a, –os, –as, *your, of yours*			
3rd pers.	**su**	**sus**, *your*	**suyo**, –a,	**suyos**, –as, *your, of yours*
	su	**sus**, *their*	**suyo**, –a,	**suyos**, –as, *their, of theirs*

(1) Possessive adjectives are usually repeated before each noun to which they refer, unless the nouns refer to the same person or thing:

mi mujer y **mi** hija. — *my wife and daughter.*

But **mi** amigo y socio. — *my friend and partner* (the same person).

82. Agreement. — Possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor:

mi amigo, *my friend.* — **mis** amigos, *my friends.*

su casa, *his house.* — **sus** casas, *his houses.*

83. The Fuller Forms which follow the noun are used for rhetorical effect or emphasis, and familiarly in direct address. They are also used as predicate with the verb **ser**:

Es un conocido **mío.**	*He is an acquaintance of mine.*
No es culpa **suya.**	*It is not his fault.*
Sí, amigo **mío,** lo sé.	*Yes, my friend, I know it.*
Este caballo es **suyo.**	*This horse is his.*

(1) In direct address **mío** is used with an unmodified noun, but either **mi** or **mío** with a noun modified by an adjective or participle:

amigo mío, *my friend.*
mi querido amigo, *or* querido amigo **mío,** *my dear friend.*

84. Definite Article for Possessive. — The definite article is frequently used instead of the possessive adjective where no ambiguity is possible regarding the possessor. The possessor is frequently indicated by the indirect object form of the appropriate personal pronoun:

Tiene una carta en **la** mano.	*He has a letter in his hand.*
Fijó **los** ojos en mí.	*He fixed his eyes upon me.*
Entró, **los** ojos bañados en lágrimas.	*He entered with his eyes bathed in tears.*
Me estrechó **la** mano.	*He clasped my hand.*
No podía verle **la** cara.	*I could not see his face.*

85. Possessive Pronouns. — The possessive pronouns are.

		SINGULAR		
el mío,	**la mía,**	**los míos,**	**las mías,**	*mine*
el tuyo,	**la tuya,**	**los tuyos,**	**las tuyas,**	*thine*
el suyo,	**la suya,**	**los suyos,**	**las suyas,**	*yours.* / *his.* / *hers.* / *its.*
		PLURAL		
el nuestro,	**la nuestra,**	**los nuestros,**	**las nuestras,**	*ours.*
el vuestro,	**la vuestra,**	**los vuestros,**	**las vuestras,**	*yours.*
el suyo,	**la suya,**	**los suyos,**	**las suyas,**	*yours.* / *theirs.*

(*a*) The **el** of these forms contracts with **de** and **a** to **del** and **al.**

(*b*) Both the possessive adjectives and the pronouns may be made emphatic by adding the proper form of **propio:**

Le lavé con **mis propias** manos.	*I washed him with my own hands.*
Le entregó no mi libro, sino **el suyo propio.**	*He gave him, not my book, but his own.*

86. Agreement. — Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

Tiene mi reloj y **el tuyo.**	*He has my watch and thine.*
La casa de Pedro y **la mía.**	*Peter's house and mine.*
Mis discípulos y **los suyos.**	*My pupils and his.*

87. Expletive Construction. - The use of the possessive adjective **su** of the third person singular and plural (and consequently, also possessive forms of **usted** and **ustedes**), would occasionally give rise to ambiguity because of the number of possible meanings. This is avoided either, (1) by adding after the noun the preposition **de** and a personal pronoun, or, (2) by substituting the proper form of the definite article for the possessive, and adding after the noun **de** and the personal pronoun:

Su sobrino de	**V,**	*your*	*nephew.*	Or, **El sobrino de**	**V.**
	él,	*his*			**él.**
	ella,	*her*			**ella.**
	VV,	*your*			**VV.**
	ellos,	*their*			**ellos.**
	ellas,				**ellas.**

(1) Similarly, for the possessive adjective **suyo, de** and the pronoun may be substituted; and for the possessive pronoun **el suyo,** the proper form of the definite article and **de** with the personal pronoun:

Instead of un conocido **suyo,** un conocido **de él** (V., ella, VV., ellos, ellas).
Instead of mi casa y **la suya,** mi casa y **la de él** (V., ella, VV., ellos, ellas).

EXERCISE XXIII

amable, *amiable, kindly.*
asunto, m., *affair, business.*
batirse, *to fight.*
corriente, *current, present;* **el —** (mes, understood), *the present* [*month.*
costoso, -a, *expensive.*
defensa, f., *defense.*
equivocarse, *to be mistaken.*
estrechar, *to clasp.*
llenár, *to fill.*
patriota, m., *patriot.*
perder, *to lose.*
próximo pasado (mes, understood), *the month just passed.*
saludo, m., *salutation.*
vi, 1st sg. pret. of ver (156).

1. Su casa de V. es más grande que la nuestra, aunque la nuestra es más costosa. 2. Su padre de él era antes más rico que el mío, pero perdió su dinero al mismo tiempo que el tuyo. 3. Sus guantes de ella están sobre la mesa, pero he perdido los míos. 4. Vi los de V. en su cuarto. 5. Me preguntó, de quién eran estos libros. Le contesté que creía que eran míos. 6. No, señor; no son de V.: son nuestros. 7. ¿Es aquel hombre un conocido de VV.? — Sí, es muy amigo nuestro. 8. Muy señor mío: he recibido su carta del primero del corriente. 9. Muy señores nuestros: ayer recibimos su carta del primero del próximo pasado. 10. Querido amigo mío: te equivocas, si dices que te he olvidado. 11. He escrito a mi padre: escriba V. al suyo. 12. Hace una hora que salió de nuestra casa para ir a la tuya. 13. ¿Cómo está su señora de V.? — Muy bien, gracias, ¿y la de V.? 14. Este sombrero que lleva V. no es el de V., sino el de su hermano. 15. No hablamos de nuestros asuntos, sino de los de él. 16. Este amigo nuestro ha vivido muchos años en España. 17. Este hombre no distingue bien entre lo mío y lo tuyo. 18. El patriota se bate en defensa de su patria y de los suyos. 19. Me estrechó la mano y los ojos se le llenaron de lágrimas. 20. Se quitó el sombrero y me hizo un saludo muy amable.

Oral. — My house and yours, our garden and theirs, their teacher and ours, my father and his, our mother and hers. A friend of mine, an acquaintance of theirs, my dear father (*two ways*), your sisters (*two ways*).

Continue the following: 1. I have sold my horse, you have sold your horse, etc. 2. I have lost mine (*m. and f.*). 3. I have found mine (*sing. and plur.*).

1. His brother reads more than mine, but mine studies more than his. 2. Their house was built after yours, but yours is the better. 3. She took off her hat, which was not so handsome as yours, although it was more expensive. 4. That friend of ours, of whom I spoke, is coming to visit us. 5. Whose are these gloves? — Are they yours? 6. No, I have mine in my pocket. I think they are hers. 7. Dear sir: I hasten to answer[1] your letter of yesterday. 8. Gentlemen: We have not been able[2] to answer sooner[3] your letter of last week. 9. The professor is (a) great[4] friend of theirs.[5] 10. We met in Spain Mr. Garcia, an acquaintance of yours. 11. You are mistaken; I do not know Mr. Garcia. 12. That money is not theirs, but his. I saw it fall.[6] 13. I saw your father yesterday in New York. 14. I can not find either[7] my umbrella or[7] yours. 15. Are you speaking of his affairs or of mine? 16. We are not speaking of his nor of mine, but of yours. 17. There are but two white houses on our street, mine and theirs. 18. Here is his letter: take[8] it and give me mine. 19. What have you in your hand?

[1] *contestar a.* [2] *podido.* [3] *antes.* [4] *muy.* [5] *de ellos.* [6] *caer.* [7] *ni.* [8] *tomar*

LESSON XXIV

88. Stem-Varying Verbs. — The stem vowel of many Spanish verbs undergoes phonetic change when it falls under the accent, and is in some cases affected by the vowel in the following syllable. Such verbs are called *stem-varying* verbs. They are divided into four classes according to the nature of the change.

NOTE. — In this book the four classes are, for the convenience of the student, designated by a typical verb.

89. *Pensar*-Class. — The first, or **pensar**-class, includes only verbs of the first and second conjugations. **E** and **o** of the stem become respectively **ie** and **ue** when accented: i.e., in the singular and third plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive and in the second singular of the imperative.

(*A*) VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(1) **Pensar,** *to think*

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
pensar	**pienso**	pensé	pensando	pensado
	piensas			
FUT.	**piensa**			
pensaré	pensamos			
	pensáis			
COND.	**piensan**			
pensaría				
	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.		
	pensaba	pensase		
	PRES. SUBJ.	COND. SUBJ.		
	piense	pensara		
	pienses			
	piense			
	pensemos			
	penséis			
	piensen			
	IMPV.	FUT. SUBJ.		
	piensa	pensare		
	pensad			

(2) **Contar,** *to count, recount, tell*

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
contar	**cuento**	conté	contando	contado
	cuentas			
FUT.	**cuenta**			
contaré	contamos			
	contáis			
COND.	**cuentan**			
contaría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
contaba	contase
Pres. Subj.	**Cond. Subj.**
cuente	contara
cuentes	
cuente	
contemos	
contéis	
cuenten	
Impv.	**Fut. Subj.**
cuenta	contare
contad	

(*B*) VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

(1) **Perder,** *to lose*

Inf.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
perder	**pierdo**	perdí	perdiendo	perdido
	pierdes			
	pierde			
Fut.	perdemos			
perderé	perdéis			
	pierden			
Cond.				
perdería	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	perdía	perdiese		
	Pres. Subj.	**Cond. Subj.**		
	pierda	perdiera		
	pierdas			
	pierda			
	perdamos			
	perdáis			
	pierdan			
	Impv.	**Fut. Subj.**		
	pierde	perdiere		
	perded			

(2) **Volver,** *to turn, return*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
volver	**vuelvo**	volví	volviendo	**vuelto**
	vuelves			
Fut.	**vuelve**			
volveré	volvemos			
	volvéis			
Cond.	**vuelven**			
volvería				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
volvía	volviese

Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
vuelva	volviera
vuelvas	
vuelva	
volvamos	
volváis	
vuelvan	

Impv.	Fut. Subj.
vuelve	volviere
volved	

Note 1. — **Volver,** its compounds, and **solver** and its compounds have an irregular past participle in **uelto.**

Note 2. — The verbs **cernir, jugar** (not **enjugar**) and **adquirir** also belong to this class and change **e, u, i,** to **ie, ue,** and **ie** respectively.

Note 3. — There is no way to tell what verbs having **e** or **o** in the stem are thus affected. All stem-varying verbs are included in an index of irregular verbs in the appendix. A list of some of the most common verbs of this class is given as material for the exercises and for practice:

acordarse, *to remember.*
acostarse, *to lie down, go to bed.*
almorzar, *to take luncheon.*
apretar, *to press, squeeze.*
cerrar, *to close.*
comenzar, *to commence.*
costar, *to cost.*
defender, *to defend.*
despertarse, *to awaken.*
doler, *to pain, grieve.*
empezar, *to begin.*
encender, *to light.*
encontrar, *to meet, find.*
entender, *to understand, hear.*

errar,[1] *to err, wander.*
llover, *to rain* (impersonal).
morder, *to bite.*
negar, *to deny.*
nevar, *to snow* (impersonal).
oler,[2] *to smell.*
probar, *to try, taste.*
recordar, *to remember.*
rogar, *to ask, implore.*
sentarse, *to sit down.*
tronar, *to thunder* (impersonal).
verter, *to pour, shed.*

[1] The *i* of the diphthong in **errar** becomes **y**:

yerro, yerras, yerra, erramos, erráis, yerran, etc.

[2] An *h* is prefixed to all forms of **oler** in which diphthongisation occurs:

huelo, hueles, huele, olemos, oléis, huelen, etc.

EXERCISE XXIV

cabeza, f., *head.*
daño, m., *damage;* **hacer —,** *to hurt.*
delicioso, –a, *delicious.*
generalmente, *generally.*
lámpara, f., *lamp.*
manera, f., *manner.*
mediodía, m., *midday, noon.*
miedo, m., *fear.*
muchas veces, *often.*
perro, m., *dog.*
querer decir, *to mean.*
quieto, –a, *quiet.*
relampaguear, *to lighten.*
situación, f., *situation.*
tempestad, f., *storm.*
terrible, *terrible.*
volver, *to turn, return;* **— a,** *to do again.*

PHRASES

No vuelva V. a pedírmelo. — *Do not ask me for it again.*
Si vuelve a hacerlo . . . — *If he does it again.*
No he vuelto a verle. — *I never saw him again.*

1. Cierre V. la puerta y abra la ventana. 2. No me aprietes tanto la mano, me haces daño. 3. Despiértate, perezoso: pronto será hora de almorzar. 4. Siéntate y estate quieto, hijo mío. 5. Si tiemblo, no es de miedo, sino de frío. 6. Acuérdese Vd. de mí y no le olvidaré a Vd. 7. Acuéstate, Juan; se hace tarde. 8. En Madrid se almuerza generalmente a mediodía. 9. Me encuentro en una situación bastante difícil. 10. Pruebe Vd. esta pera; la encontrará deliciosa. 11. En el otoño muchas veces nieva y llueve al mismo tiempo. 12. Encienda Vd. la lámpara: no puedo ver. 13. ¿Entiende V. lo que quiere decir este hombre?

14. Ya empieza la tempestad: truena y relampaguea de una manera terrible. 15. Pierdo mucho tiempo a causa del gran calor que hace. 16. Me duele la cabeza; no puedo escribir más. 17. ¿Qué tienes, María? — Me duelen los dientes. 18. No te acerques a aquel perro: muerde a todos los que[1] se le acercan. 19. No se[2] lo puedo hacer hoy: vuelva Vd. mañana. 20. Mi hermano Carlos no está casado ni piensa casarse. 21. Huela Vd. esta rosa: huele bien, ¿no es verdad?

[1] Those who. [2] For you.

ORAL. — *Continue the following:* 1. I am lighting the lamp. 2. I am closing the door. 3. I waste my time. 4. I am counting the money.

It rains, it snows, it thunders, it lightens. Wake up (*tú*). Sit down (*Vd.*) there. Go to bed (*vosotros*). Do not deny it (*Vd.*). Return (*Vd.*) soon. My eyes ache. Her head aches.

1. Do you think of[1] me often? — I think of[1] you every day. 2. What is the matter with him? — His head and eyes ache. 3. He is trembling; let him lie down. 4. Sit down in this chair; you will find it more comfortable. 5. If you lose this watch, I will never buy you another.[2] 6. This dog bites, children; do not approach him. 7. If he wakens, open the window. 8. I am beginning to[3] understand you. 9. Taste this coffee: it is very good. 10. I do not think (*find*) it so good, although it smells good.[4] 11. It is very bad weather to-day; when it is not raining, it snows. 12. Count from[5] 1 to[5] 100.[8] 13. Do not count on[6] me: I have a great deal to do. 14. How much does this book cost? — It cost me two dollars. 15. Remember us and write us often.[7] 16. If you do not understand, do not answer. 17. Return as soon as possible. 18. Let us return to the house; they lunch early. 19. It was growing late; they were already lighting the lamps. 20. Do you not understand what I mean?

[1] *en.* [2] *otro.* [3] *a.* [4] *bien.* [5] *desde . . . hasta.* [6] *con.* [7] *a menudo.* [8] *ciento.*

LESSON XXV

English has two demonstrative adjectives and two demonstrative pronouns, distinguishing objects near at hand and those at a distance. Spanish has three of both, distinguishing objects near to the speaker, those near the person addressed, and those distant from both.

90. Demonstrative Adjectives. — The forms of the demonstrative adjectives in Spanish are:

	Near the speaker.		*Near the person addressed.*		*Distant from both.*	
			SINGULAR			
Masc.	**este,**	*this*	**ese,**	*that*	**aquel,**	*that*
Fem.	**esta,**		**esa,**		**aquella,**	
			PLURAL			
Masc.	**estos,**	*these*	**esos,**	*those*	**aquellos,**	*those*
Fem.	**estas,**		**esas,**		**aquellas,**	

(1) The same distinction appears in the demonstratives that is shown in the adverbs **aquí, ahí,** and **allí**:

Este libro que tengo aquí.	*This book that I have here.*
Ese libro que V. tiene ahí.	*That book that you have there.*
Aquel libro que él tiene allí.	*That book that he has there.*

(2) *Agreement and position.* — The demonstrative adjective agrees with its noun in number and gender. It usually stands before the noun, but is sometimes placed after it for emphasis:

este hombre, **aquella** mujer,	*this man, that woman.*
esos muchachos, **esas** plumas,	*those boys, those pens.*
la casa **esa,**	*that house.*
los dramas **aquellos,**	*those dramas.*

(3) **Ese** means not only '*that near you*', but also '*that of yours*', '*that you mention*'. It is also used when the idea of nearness or distance in time or place is not especially to be emphasized. It is the demonstrative of the middle ground:

No me gusta **ese** sombrero.	*I do not like that hat.*
No hay sitio para todo **ese** equipaje.	*There is no room for all that baggage.*
Suba V. **esos** hombros.	*Raise those shoulders* (of yours).
Esa broma es de muy mal gusto.	*That joke is in very bad taste.*
En **ese** caso.	*In that case.*
No puedo presentarme ante **esa** mujer.	*I cannot present myself before that woman.*

91. Demonstrative Pronouns. — The demonstrative pronouns are:

SINGULAR

Near the speaker.		*Near the person addressed.*		*Distant from both.*	
Masc. **éste,**	*this*, this one	**ése,**	*that, that one*	**aquél,**	*that, that one*
Fem. **ésta,**		**ésa,**		**aquélla,**	
Neut. **esto,**		**eso,**		**aquello,**	

PLURAL

Masc. **éstos,** *Fem.* **éstas,**	*these*	**ésos,** **ésas,**	*those*	**aquéllos,** **aquéllas,**	*those*

(1) '*The former . . . the latter*', is expressed in Spanish by **éste . . . aquél.** It is to be noted, however, that Spanish reverses the English order:

Se miraron padre e hijo, **éste** muy tranquilo, **aquél** enfadado.	*Father and son looked at one another, the former angry, the latter very calm.*

(2) **Esto, eso** and **aquello** never have the accent and have no plural. They refer to a thing or event in an indefinite way, or to a whole sentence or statement:

Esto es muy desagradable.	*This is very disagreeable.*
No hablemos más de **eso.**	*Let us speak no more of that.*
Yo no dije **aquello.**	*I did not say that.*

92. Before a relative clause introduced by **que,** and before a clause introduced by **de,** the proper form of the definite article is generally used instead of a demonstrative pronoun:

El que habla es mi padre.	*The one who is speaking is my father.*
Esta mujer es **la** que buscábamos.	*This woman is the one we were seeking.*
Los que dicen eso, mienten.	*Those who say that, lie.*
Estos árboles y **los** de más allá.	*These trees and those beyond.*
Esta muchacha y **la** de los ojos negros.	*This girl and the black eyed one.*

(1) The demonstrative adjective **aquel** may be used for emphasis in this construction instead of the article:

No me gusta **aquella** a quien encontramos anoche.	*I do not like that one we met last night.*

(2) The article with **de** is always used where in English a noun in the possessive case implies also the name of the thing possessed:

Mi libro y **el de** mi amigo.	*My book and my friend's.*
La casa de Juan y **la de** su padre.	*John's house and his father's.*

EXERCISE XXV

algodón, m., *cotton.*
banco, m., *bank.*
colegio, m., *school.*
modo, m., *manner, way.*
parecer, *to appear, seem.*
seda, f., *silk.*
tener prestado, *to have borrowed.*
traigo, 1st. per. sg. pres. indic. of **traer,** *to bring* (cf. 153).
valer, *to be worth;* no — nada, *to be worthless, no good.*
vámonos, 1st per. pl. imp. of **ir,** *to go* (cf. 145).

1. Este libro es el mío, ése es de V., y aquél es de mi hermana. 2. Este edificio que está delante de nosotros es un colegio, aquél es un banco. 3. Ese paraguas es de seda: el mío es de algodón. 4. Ese libro que tiene V. en la mano, ¿por quién es? 5. Me sentaré en esta silla: siéntese V. en ésa. 6. Vámonos por aquella calle: en ésta hay mucha gente. 7. Yo también pienso de ese modo. 8. Pruebe V. esta pera; está más madura que ésa. 9. Encienda V. esa lámpara: ésta no vale nada. 10. Nunca dije yo esas palabras: lo que dije fué esto. 11. No entiendo eso: ¿qué quiere V. decir? 12. Le traigo a V. aquellos libros suyos que tenía prestados. 13. Esto de estar trabajando todo el día es

muy desagradable. 14. No puedo hacer hoy todo aquello. 15. Me parece más bonito el vestido de la niña que el de su madre. 16. La pluma de oro puede ser la mejor, pero ésta es la que yo escojo. 17. Fuí[2] ayer a comprarme un traje. Algunos de los que me enseñaron, me gustaron mucho. 18. Aquí tienen VV. las cartas que he recibido hoy: ésas son las que he leído. 19. Napoleón y Wellington eran grandes generales: éste era Inglés, aquél Francés.

[1] Cf. 143. [2] I went.

ORAL. — This glove and that one; this house and that one; these pencils and those; these pens and those. This hat and John's; my friend and Mary's; this room and my father's; this house and my friend's. This is good. That is bad. He who comes here; she who lives there; the ones you want.

1. Will you lend me that umbrella that you have in your hand? 2. Do you know that man? — Yes, he lives in that white house. 3. That pen is worthless; take this one. 4. That dress of yours is of silk, is it not? Mine is of cotton. 5. This pretty little girl is the daughter of that man yonder. 6. Sit down here: this chair is more comfortable than that one. 7. What[1] do you call[2] this in Spanish? 8. They are going through that street yonder; what does that mean? 9. I like that hat, though Mary's is more expensive. 10. Do not think any more about that: it is done. 11. Take off that hat; it is not yours. 12. These flowers are prettier than those, and I believe that these are cheaper. 13. I am bringing you two letters: this one is for you, and that one for him. 14. Take[3] that one to him at once. 15. I sent your father's to the house. 16. Here are the books that you lent me. These are the ones that I have read. 17. The Frenchman and the Englishman are acquaintances of ours; the former is from Bordeaux, the latter from Liverpool. 18. Do not say[4] that; it is not true. 19. Let us talk no more about that: it is very disagreeable.

[1] *cómo.* [2] *llamarse.* [3] *llevar.* [4] Cf. 143.

LESSON XXVI

93. The Second or *Sentir*-Class of stem-varying verbs includes only verbs of the third conjugation. **E** and **o** of the stem become **ie** and **ue** respectively under the accent. When unaccented and not followed in the next syllable by accented **i**, they become respectively **i** and **u**, except in the future and conditional.

(1) **Sentir,** *to feel, regret*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
sentir	**siento**	sentí	**sintiendo**	sentido
	sientes	sentiste		
Fut.	**siente**	**sintió**		
sentiré	sentimos	sentimos		
	sentís	sentisteis		
Cond.	**sienten**	**sintieron**		
sentiría	Impf. Indic.	Impf. Subj.		
	sentía	**sintiese**		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	sienta	**sintiera**		
	sientas			
	sienta			
	sintamos			
	sintáis			
	sientan			
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	siente sentid	**sintiere**		

(2) **Dormir,** *to sleep.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
dormir	**duermo**	dormí	**durmiendo**	dormido
	duermes	dormiste		
	duerme	**durmió**		
Fut.	dormimos	dormimos		
dormiré	dormís	dormisteis		
	duermen	**durmieron**		

Cond.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
dormiría	dormía	**durmiese**
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
	duerma	**durmiera**
	duermas	
	duerma	
	durmamos	
	durmáis	
	duerman	
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.
	duerme	**durmiere**
	dormid	

(*a*) The following are common verbs of the ***sentir***-class: Like sentir:

advertir, *to warn, notice.*
arrepentirse, *to repent, regret.*
consentir, *to consent.*
divertir, *to amuse.*
hervir, *to boil.*
herir, *to wound.*
mentir, *to lie.*
pervertir, *to pervert.*
preferir, *to prefer.*
presentir, *to have a presentiment.*
referir, *to relate.*

Like **dormir,** but with irreg. past part., **morir,** *to die.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
morir	**muero**	morí	**muriendo**	**muerto**

94. The Third or *Pedir*-Class of verbs with phonetic variations includes only verbs of the third conjugation. The **e** of the stem becomes **i** when accented, or when unaccented and not followed in the next syllable by an accented **i,** except as in § 93.

Pedir, *to ask, ask for, request*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
pedir	**pido**	pedí	**pidiendo**	pedido
	pides	pediste		
Fut.	**pide**	**pidió**		
pediré	pedimos	pedimos		
	pedís	pedisteis		
	piden	**pidieron**		

Cond.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
pediría	pedía	**pidiese**
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
	pida	**pidiera**
	pidas	
	pida	
	pidamos	
	pidáis	
	pidan	
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.
	pide pedid	**pidiere**

(*a*) The following are some common verbs of this class:

concebir, *to conceive.*
conseguir, *to succeed in.*
corregir, *to correct.*
despedirse, *to take leave.*
elegir, *to elect.*
gemir, *to groan.*
impedir, *to prevent.*
proseguir, *to pursue, proceed.*
reír,[1] *to laugh.*
reñir, *to scold, quarrel.*
repetir, *to repeat.*
seguir, *to follow, continue.*
servir, *to serve.*
vestir, *to dress.*

95. The Fourth or *Huir*-Class. All verbs in **uir,** with audible **u,** and in **üir** change **u** to **uy** before other vowels than single **i.** It is to be remembered, also, that atonic **i** becomes **y** between vowels.

Huir, *to flee*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
huir	**huyo**	huí	**huyendo**	huido
	huyes	huiste		
	huye	**huyó**		
Fut.	huimos	huimos		
huiré	huis	huisteis		
	huyen	**huyeron**		
Cond.	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
huiría	huía	**huyese**		

Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
huya	**huyera**
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
huye huid	**huyere**

(*a*) **Argüir,** *argue,* is conjugated like **huir,** except that the diaresis is lost before **y**:

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
argüir	**arguyo**	argüí	**arguyendo**	argüido

(*b*) The following are common verbs of the huir-class.

atribuir, *to attribute.*
concluir, *to finish.*
construir, *to construct.*
contribuir, *to contribute.*
destruir, *to destroy.*
distribuir, *to distribute.*
instituir, *to establish.*
instruir, *to instruct.*
restituir, *to restore.*
sustituir, *to substitute.*

[1]**Reír** and other verbs in **-eír** lose the **i** of the stem before the **i** of a following diphthong. Note the accent:

Pres. Ind.	río	ríes	ríe	reímos	reís	ríen
Pres. Subj.	ría	rías	ría	riamos	riáis	rían
Impv.		ríe			reíd	
Pret.	rei	reiste	rió	reímos	reísteis	rieron
Impv. Subj.	riese					
Cond. Subj.	riera					
Fut. Subj.	riere					

EXERCISE XXVI

abominable, *abominable.*
bosque, m., *forest.*
camino, m., *road.*
campo, m., *field.*
caso, m., *matter, thing.*
centígrado, m., *centigrade.*
cero, m., *zero.*
cincuenta, *fifty.*
dificultad, f., *difficulty.*
discurso, m., *speech.*
dispensado, -a, *pardoned.*
fortuna, f., *fortune,*
grado, m., *degree.*
luto, m., *mourning.*
mentira, f., *lie.*
montar, *to mount, get in.*
pasar, *to pass.*
perdón, m., *pardon.*
presidente, m., *president.*
vaca, f., *cow.*
vuelta, f., *return;* **a — de correo,** *by return mail.*

PHRASES

Lo siento, *I am sorry.*
Sírvase V. decirme, *please tell me.*

1. Vd. no está bien; lo siento mucho. 2. Es verdad, no me siento muy bien: voy a acostarme un rato. 3. Me arrepiento de haber dicho eso, pero ya es tarde. 4. El agua se hiela a cero y hierve a cien grados centígrado. 5. No mientas: la mentira es cosa abominable. 6. Si V. consiente en esta proposición, nuestra fortuna está hecha. 7. ¿V. va al teatro esta noche? ¿no es verdad? Diviértase V. mucho. 8. Generalmente ella duerme bien, pero anoche no se durmió hasta muy tarde. 9. La madre de este pobre muchacho se murió el año pasado. 10. Pido a V. perdón, señora. — Está Vd. dispensado, señor. 11. ¿Cuánto pide por esa vaca? — Si pide más de cincuenta pesos no la venderá. 12. Sírvase Vd. tomar asiento y referiré a Vd. el caso. 13. Sírvanse escribirme a vuelta de correo. 14. Siguieron su camino, pasando por campos y bosques. 15. Siga Vd. escribiendo: yo esperaré. 16. Con alguna dificultad consiguió levantarse. 17. Se despidió de nosotros y montó en el tranvía. 18. En los Estados Unidos el pueblo elige al presidente por cuatro años. 19. Si ustedes se ríen, no proseguiré mi discurso. 20. Siga Vd., señor, nadie se ríe de Vd.; reíamos de otra cosa. 21. ¿Porqué se viste él de luto? — Su hermano murió el año pasado.

ORAL. — *Continue the following:* 1. I do not feel very well. 2. I prefer this book to that one. 3. I dress myself. 4. I took leave of them. 5. I asked for a glass of water.

1. Do not lie to me. Tell[7] me what you did. 2. If we felt[1] better, we would do it to-day. 3. When a person dies, his relatives dress in[2] black. 4. If you prefer wine, I will give[3] you a glass of good white wine. 5. I should prefer water if you have it. 6. Did you sleep well last night? — I always[4] sleep well. 7. When did his father die? — It is two years now since he died. 8. I made him a proposition, but he did not consent to it. 9. Ask them for a glass of cold water: I am very thirsty. 10. Last year the American people elected a president. 11. Continue[5]

reading your book; I have some letters to write. 12. The man who has just passed asked me for alms. 13. He warned me that, if I did it, I should repent later. 14. We enjoyed ourselves greatly at the theater last night.[4] 15. In the cafés they serve very good meals, but they are dear. 16. The road that they followed[5] passed[6] through the fields. 17. Do not laugh at that poor man. — We were not laughing at him. 18. Repeat that; I do not understand. 19. Get up (*V.*) and dress yourself; it will soon be breakfast time.

[1] Reflex. [2] *de*. [3] *daré*. [4] Put first. [5] *seguir*. [6] Impf. [7] *decir* (143).

LESSON XXVII

96. The Relative Pronouns in Spanish are:

que, *who, which, that.*
quien, plur., **quienes,** *who.*
el cual, los cuales,
la cual, las cuales,
lo cual, } *who, which.*
el que, los que,
la que, las que,
lo que, } *who, which.*
cuyo, –a, –os, –as, *whose, of which.*
cuanto, –a, –os, –as, *all that which, all that.*

97. Que is the relative most frequently used. It is invariable for gender and number, and refers either to persons or things. It cannot, however, be used after prepositions to refer to persons:

el sombrero **que** compré,	*the hat that I bought.*
la mujer **que** viene,	*the woman who is coming.*
los libros **que** más me gustan,	*the books that I like best.*
las dos pesetas **que** le di,	*the two pesetas that I gave him.*

(1) **Que,** having but one form, must necessarily follow its antecedent closely. It is used in both restrictive or adjectival clauses and in con-

tinuative clauses, i.e., clauses in which the antecedent clause is complete, and the relative clause adds an additional thought:

El muchacho **que** se rompió la pierna está mejor.	*The boy who broke his leg is better.*
Mi hermano mayor, **que** está ahora en Inglaterra, volverá pronto.	*My eldest brother, who is now in England, will soon return.*

98. Quien refers only to persons, and is used instead of **que** after prepositions. It sometimes includes its antecedent and is then equivalent to '*he who*', '*those who*', etc.

Yo conozco al hombre de **quien** Vds. hablan.	*I know the man of whom you speak.*
No tenemos con **quien** hablar.	*We have no one with whom to talk.*
Yo soy **quien** lo digo.	*I am the one who says it.*
Nosotros somos **quienes** sufrimos.	*We are the ones who suffer.*
Quien con lobos anda, a aullar aprende.	*He who goes with wolves learns to howl.*

(1) When not including its antecedent, **quien** is used as the subject of a verb only when it is continuative. When so used it is more emphatic than **que**:

Vi a su padre, **quien** me lo contó. *I saw his father, who told it to me.*
Llamó al niño, **quien** no contestó. *He called the boy, who did not answer.*

99. El que and **el cual,** both of which have forms to distinguish gender and number, are substitutes for **que** and **quien** and refer either to persons or things. They are used, (1) when the antecedent is at some distance from the relative, (2) when there are two or more nouns in the antecedent clause, and it is desirable to indicate by the form of the relative which is the antecedent, (3) after **sin, por** and prepositions of more than one syllable. In this use, **el cual** is preferred to **el que**; otherwise, they differ chiefly in the fact that the latter is more colloquial than the former:

Tenía un farol en su mano derecha, **el cual** movía cuando andaba.	*He had in his right hand a lantern, which moved when he walked.*

La hija del médico, **la cual** ha estado enferma, salió hoy a la calle.	*The doctor's daughter, who has been ill, went out on the street to-day.*
Vd. me ha prestado un servicio sin **el cual** nunca me hubiera podido salvar del peligro.	*You have rendered me a service without which I could never have escaped the danger.*
Se sentó al pie de un árbol, debajo **del cual** había hierba menuda.	*He sat down at the foot of a tree beneath which there was fine grass.*

NOTE. — The longer relatives are used as subjects only in continuative clauses. They differ from **que** in this use in being more emphatic, i.e., in calling special attention to the relative subject. After the shorter prepositions they are used most frequently when the antecedent is preceded by the indefinite article or is partitive.

100. **Lo que** and **lo cual** refer only to the idea contained in a preceding clause, and never to any definite person or thing:

No registraron mis bolsillos, **lo cual** me extrañó mucho.	*They did not search my pockets (a thing) which surprised me exceedingly.*

101. **Cuyo** is a relative adjective of possession corresponding to the English '*whose*', '*of which*'. It agrees in gender and number with the noun it qualifies:

El árbol **cuya** fruta comía.	*The tree, the fruit of which I was eating.*
El autor **cuyos** libros leo.	*The author whose books I am reading.*

102. **Cuanto** is both an adjective and a pronoun. It agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies or with its antecedent. It is equivalent to **todo lo que, todos los que,** etc.:

Recogí **cuantos** libros había en la mesa.	*I picked up all the books that were on the table.*
De los hombres del pueblo, he reunido **cuantos** me han parecido aptos para la empresa.	*Of the men of the town, I have got together all those who seemed to me fitted for the undertaking.*

EXERCISE XXVII

anunciar, *to announce.*
asunto, m., *subject.*
cantar, *to sing.*
cigarro, m., *cigar.*
citar, *to cite, quote.*
cuello, m., *neck.*
cuerpo, m., *body.*
desierto, –a, *deserted.*
espantar, *to frighten.*
estimar, *to esteem.*
herir, *to wound.*
importar, *to be important.*
inocente, *innocent.*
ladrón, m., *thief.*
mal, m., *trouble, sorrow.*
novela, f., *novel.*
número, m., *number.*
objeto, m., *object.*
ofrecer, *to offer.*
parte, *f., part.*
perseguir, *to pursue.*
piedra, f., *stone.*
sostener, *to sustain, bear.*
tono, m., *style.*

PHRASE

a la inglesa (francesa), *manera* being understood, *in the English (French) way.*

1. La casa, que era de piedra, parecía desierta. 2. Los hombres, que parecían extranjeros, no me contestaron. 3. El hombre a quien hirieron ayer los ladrones ha muerto. 4. Ésta es la novela de que le hablamos a V. 5. He visto a una persona a quien VV. conocen. 6. Salí a la calle y encontré a mi amigo Eduardo, quien venía a buscarme. 7. Son personas a quienes estimamos mucho y de quienes espero serás amigo. 8. Él es quien se lo repitió a ellos. 9. Quien canta, sus males espanta. 10. La parte más alta del cuerpo es la cabeza, la cual se halla sostenida por el cuello. 11. Sacó dos cigarros, uno de los cuales me ofreció a mí. 12. La calle por la cual marchamos se llama del Príncipe. 13. Es un cuerpo de hombres escogidos, entre los cuales tengo el honor de contarme. 14. He recibido una carta en la que se me anuncia la muerte de un primo mío. 15. Aquel hombre, al que tanto persiguieron, era inocente. 16. Es un asunto acerca del cual se ha hablado mucho. 17. Él se viste a la inglesa, lo que es de muy buen tono. 18. Ella no es bonita, pero es buena, lo cual importa más. 19. Conocemos muy bien al hombre cuyas

palabras V. cita. 20. Registraron cuantos objetos había en el cuarto. 21. Me refirió cuanto le había pasado. 22. Vive cerca de nosotros en una casa de cuyo número no me acuerdo.

1. I returned[1] the knife to the boy who had lent it to me. 2. Do you know that gentleman with whom I was talking? 3. The girl whom[2] he has married has very little money. 4. The street in which we walked was narrow and dirty. 5. He has friends in whom he has much confidence. 6. We called a servant, who was very slow[3] in coming.[4] 7. Does your aunt know this? — It is she who told it to me. 8. He who has not seen Granada, has seen nothing. 9. I will read you some letters from my brother which will interest you. 10. The tree under which we had seated ourselves was very high. 11. He is a man about whom many strange things are said. 12. These books among which I live and work are my best friends. 13. We are going to the house in the country in which we are to live this summer. 14. The men, many of whom were not known to him, listened attentively to his words. 15. His words pleased all those who heard him. 16. They told us all that they had said. 17. Don Quijote lived in a village, the name of which the author did not wish[5] to remember. 18. The author whose novels I am reading now is one of the best writers in Spain. 19. I have good health, which is the most important thing. 20. The child sleeps very little, (a thing) which surprises me greatly.

1 *devolver.* 2 *con quien.* 3 *tardar mucho.* 4 *en* with inf. 5 *quiso.*

LESSON XXVIII

103. The Subjunctive, though used in independent clauses (cf. 30), is primarily the mood of dependent or subjoined clauses. A verb in the subjunctive expresses the action of the verb, not

as a fact, but as an action willed, commanded, forbidden, caused, as causing emotion, or as uncertain.

Remark. — The chief difficulty in the use of the subjunctive for English speaking students arises from the fact that the subjunctive forms in English have been almost entirely lost, and with them the feeling for the significance of this form of the verb The subjunctive forms of English have been supplanted by the infinitive, the indicative, and the compound forms with 'may', 'might', 'would', and 'should'. The student will note the translations of the subjunctives given in the examples below.

104. The Subjunctive with Verbs. — The following are some of the chief uses of the subjunctive after verbs in Spanish:

(*a*) After verbs of willing, wishing, commanding, forbidding, requesting and their opposites:

Yo quiero que usted lo **haga.**	*I want you to do it.*
El general mandó que **quemasen** la casa.	*The general ordered them to burn the house.*
Nos suplicó que le **acompañásemos.**	*He begged us to accompany him.*
Permita V. que le **presente** a mi **amigo.**	*Permit me to present you to my friend.*

(*b*) After verbs expressing emotion:

Teme que yo no **halle** la casa.	*He is afraid that I shall not find the house.*
Temió que no **hallásemos** la casa.	*He feared that we should not find the house.*
Me sorprende que él lo **tome** así.	*I am surprised that he should take it thus.*
Siento mucho que ella no **esté** bien.	*I am very sorry that she is not well.*

(*c*) After expressions of doubt and denial:

Niega que **sea** verdad.	*He denies that it is true.*
Dudo que **sea** culpable.	*I doubt whether he is guilty.*

Note. — **Creer,** *to believe,* is usually followed by the subjunctive if used negatively or interrogatively:

No creí que me **siguiese** hasta aquí.	*I did not believe that he would follow me this far.*
¿Cree Vd. que me lo **diga**?	*Do you believe that he will tell me?*

(*d*) After impersonal verbs and expressions, if uncertainty is expressed:

Es preciso que él se **marche.**	*He will have to leave.*
Es una lástima que **sea** tan sordo.	*It is a pity that he is so deaf.*
¿Qué importa que lo **sepa** él?	*What difference does it make that he should know?*
But: Es verdad que no lo **sabe.**	*It is true that he does not know it.*

NOTE. — The student will note that in the above examples the subject of the dependent verb is different from that of the main verb. If the subject of the dependent verb is the same as that of the main verb, the infinitive may be used instead of the subjunctive. English may have the infinitive in both cases:

Él quiere que yo escriba la carta, pero yo no quiero **escribirla.**	*He wants me to write the letter, but I do not want to write it.*
Siento no **estar** bien y él siente que yo no lo esté.	*I am sorry that I am not well, and he is sorry that I am not.*

105. The Tenses of the Subjunctive. — The tense of the dependent subjunctive is usually determined by that of the principal clause. If the main clause is present or future, the dependent is in the present subjunctive; if the main clause is past or conditional, the dependent clause is in the imperfect or conditional subjunctive. For examples, see the preceding section.

(1) If the sense of the dependent clause is past, the verb may be in the past even after a present tense:

Siento mucho que V. no me **trajera** la carta.	*I am very sorry that you did not bring me the letter.*

EXERCISE XXVIII

coche, m., *carriage.*
cuanto antes, *as soon as possible.*
culpable, *guilty.*
di, 2nd sg. impv. of **decir,** *to tell, say* (cf. 143).
extrañar, *to seem strange.*
gas, m., *gas.*
indicar, *to show.*
traído, –a, p.p. of **traer,** *to bring* (cf. 153).
traigan, 3rd plur. pres. subj. of **traer** (cf. 153).

1. Deseo que V. venga conmigo. 2. ¿Quieren VV. que se lo enseñe? 3. Dígale V. que encienda el gas. 4. Baja, niña, y dile a tu madre que suba: tengo que hablarle. 5. Le escribieron que volviese a casa cuanto antes. 6. Permitan VV. que les indique el camino que han de seguir. 7. Le prohibieron que saliese de casa. 8. Mande V. que me traigan un coche. 9. Él teme no llegar a tiempo. 10. Yo temo que ellos no lleguen a tiempo. 11. Siento que V. no haya dormido bien. 12. Me alegro de que vengas tan temprano. 13. Me extraña que V. no le haya traído. 14. Niega que él sea el culpable. 15. Dudábamos que VV. lo hallasen tan fácil como creían. 16. ¿Cree V. que él lo haya hecho? — No creo que haya hecho tal cosa. 17. Es preciso que yo vuelva pronto. 18. No es probable que ellos lleguen a saberlo. 19. Es imposible que concluyan tan pronto su trabajo. 20. Nos pidió que le ayudáramos a buscar a su hijo. 21. Perdone V. que le haya hecho esperar. 22. El médico temió que no hiciesen lo que había mandado.

Oral. — 1. I want you to write to him; I want him to write to him; I want her to write to him; I want them to write to him. 2. He asked me to help him; he asked you to help him; he asked us to help him; he asked them to help him. 3. It is important that I arrive in time, that you arrive in time, that he arrive in time, that we arrive in time, that they arrive in time.

1. I want to do it, but he wants her to do it. 2. We asked him to light the gas, and he lighted it. 3. If they do not wish him to help us, let him help the others. 4. Tell him to bring us a carriage. 5. They begged us to accompany them to church. 6. Permit me to return this umbrella which you lent me yesterday. 7. They were sorry that they had made us wait so long. 8. I am surprised that he did not understand me. 9. Can you deny that you did it? 10. It was feared that the physician would not arrive in time. 11. It is possible that he will come[1] to-day; but I do not believe that he will come[1] until to-morrow.

12. Write to him to pay the bill at once. 13. I am surprised that you should think me guilty. 14. It is necessary that we leave at once, if we wish to arrive to-day. 15. Pardon me for having said it; I did not wish to offend you. 16. He asked me to lend him some money. 17. We are sorry that you cannot[2] come in. 18. Do not be afraid that he will forget you. 19. It will be necessary that you work to-day. 20. I will never believe that he has done it.

[1] *venga.* [2] *pueda*

LESSON XXIX

106. The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses. — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses: —

(1) When the antecedent is indefinite or general:

Tendré celos de la mujer a quien **ames.**	*I shall be jealous of the woman* (whoever she may be) *whom you shall love.*
No seré yo quien le **venda.**	*I shall not be the one to betray him.*
Tome Vd. lo que **quiera.**	*Take whatever you wish.*
No conozco a nadie que le **supere.**	*I know no one who excells him.*

(*a*) If the relative clause merely states a fact about a definite antecedent, the subjunctive is not used:

Tengo celos de la mujer a quien **amas.**	*I am jealous of the woman* (definite) *whom you love.*
No soy yo quien le **vendió.**	*I am not the one who betrayed him.*
Tomó lo que **quería** y se marchó.	*He took what he wanted and left.*

(2) After the various forms of the impersonal **haber** used negatively:

No hay nadie que me **iguale** en esto.	*There is no one who equals me in this.*
No había ninguno que no **llorase.**	*There was not one who did not weep.*

(3) After the indefinite relatives **cualquiera** and **quienquiera**:

Cualquiera que **tenga** un poco de juicio lo concederá.	*Any one who has a little judgment will grant it.*
Mujer, quienquiera que **seas**, ten compasión de mí.	*Woman, whoever you may be, have pity on me.*

107. The Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses. — The subjunctive is used after conjunctions expressing concession, purpose and result, and indefinite time.

(1) The most common conjunctions of concession are:

aunque, *although, even if.*	**con tal que,** *provided that.*
a no ser que, *unless.*	**por . . . que,** *however.*

Nos acompañará, aunque **tenga** mucho que hacer.	*He will accompany us, even if he has a great deal to do.*
Nosotros lo haremos, a no ser que Vd. **prefiera** que él lo haga.	*We will do it, unless you prefer to have him do it.*
Es tarde, pero con tal que **llegue** pronto no importará.	*It is late, but provided it arrive soon it will make no difference.*
Por grandes que **sean** sus faltas, no debemos olvidar que es nuestro padre.	*However great his faults may be, we must not forget that he is our father.*

(2) Some of the common conjunctions of purpose and result:

para que, *in order that.*	**que,** *that.*
a fin de que, *in order that.*	**sin que,** *without.*

Lo repetiré para que Vds. lo **comprendan** bien.	*I will repeat it in order that you may understand it well.*
Esconderé a Vd. a fin de que no le **hallen** conmigo.	*I will hide you in order that they may not find you with me.*
Voy a hacerlo sin que nadie lo **vea.**	*I am going to do it without any one seeing it.*

(3) The following are some common temporal conjunctions which require the subjunctive when they express indefinite time:

cuando, *when.*	**mientras,** *while.*	**en cuanto,** *as soon as.*
hasta que, *until.*	**antes (de) que,** *before.*	**después que,** *after.*

Venga V. cuando **pueda.**	*Come whenever you can.*

Esperaré hasta que V. **vuelva.**	*I will wait until you return.*
Mientras V. **esté** aquí, no volverá.	*As long as you are here, he will not return.*
Concluyamos pronto antes de que nos **vea.**	*Let us finish quickly before he sees us.*
En cuanto se **reciba** el dinero, se le pagará.	*As soon as the money is received, he shall be paid.*
Hablaremos después que **hayan salido.**	*We will talk after they have gone out.*

108. The Future Subjunctive was formerly used after **si,** a relative pronoun, or an adverbial conjunction, to express future contingency:

Si **tuviereis** fe y no **dudareis . . .**	*If you have faith and doubt not . . .*
Si alguno os **dijere** algo, no respondáis.	*If anyone says anything to you, do not answer.*
Donde **fueres** haz lo que **vieres.** (Prov.)	*Wherever you go, do what you see done.*
Mientras me **durare** la vida . . .	*As long as I live . . .*

NOTE. — In these uses the future subjunctive has been almost wholly replaced by the present indicative and the present subjunctive. The student of modern Spanish will rarely meet the future subjunctive except in set phrases:

Sea lo que **fuere.**	*Be that as it may.*
Venga lo que **viniere.**	*Come what may.*

EXERCISE XXIX

bicicleta, f., *bicycle.*
contento, –a, *pleased, happy.*
corazón, m., *heart.*
da, 2nd sg. impv. of **dar,** *to give* (cf. 142).
energía, f., *energy.*
guía, m., *guide.*
honrado, –a, *honorable.*
instituir, *to institute, establish.*
menester, *necessary.*
merecer, *to deserve, merit, be worthy of.*
puedas, 2nd. sg. pres. subj. of **poder,** *to be able* (cf. 148).
querrá, 3rd sg. fut. indic. of **querer,** *to wish* (cf. 150).
quieras, 2nd. sg. pres. subj. of **querer,** *to wish* (cf. 150).
sepa, 1st sg. pres. subj. of **saber,** *to know* (cf. 151).
telefonear, *to telephone.*
venga, 3rd sg. pres. subj. of **venir,** *to come* (cf. 155).
verdaderamente, *truly.*

1. Busco un hombre que me sirva de guía. 2. Conozco a un hombre que le servirá muy bien. 3. Quiero una casa que sea cómoda y barata. 4. V. encontrará muchas que lo son. 5. Estas bicicletas son las mejores; pregunten VV. al que tenga una. 6. Ya conocemos a una persona que tiene una. 7. Tú hallarás un hombre que te merezca, que te ame, y a quien ames con toda la energía de tu corazón. 8. Si no puedes darme lo que quiero, dame lo que puedas. 9. No hay ni una sola persona de esta familia que no sea honrado. 10. Ve[1] a mi caja y toma lo que quieras. 11. No hable V., a no ser que le pregunten. 12. Voy allí, aunque me cueste la vida. 13. Aunque[2] había recibido dinero, no quería pagarme. 14. Aunque reciba dinero, no querrá pagarme. 15. Que haga lo que quiera, con tal que me deje en paz. 16. Por grandes que sean los reyes, no son sino hombres. 17. Para que un hombre sea verdaderamente feliz, es menester que esté contento de sí mismo. 18. Han venido sin que nosotros lo hayamos sabido. 19. ¿Cuándo puedo venir a verle a V.? — Venga V. cuando quiera. 20. Las ciudades instituyen escuelas para los niños, para que lleguen a ser hombres buenos. 21. Telefonéeme en cuanto reciba esta carta, a fin de que sepa lo que debo hacer. 22. Esperen VV. aquí hasta que haya salido. 23. En cuanto haya leído el libro devuélvamelo.

[1] 2nd sg. impv. of *ir* (145). [2] *Aunque* does not take subj. when the statement following is a fact.

1. Do you know any man in this town who speaks Spanish? 2. There is no one in the city who speaks the language. 3. I asked him to choose for me a house which would be cheap. 4. He replied that there was not a good house in the city which was cheap. 5. He asked for a book which would be interesting and instructive. 6. There was no one who did not regret what had happened. 7. I should believe it, although all his friends denied it. 8. I believe it, although all his friends deny it. 9. I will tell[1] you what he told me, provided you will not repeat it. 10. I shall not be happy until I have finished this book.

11. You wait here while I go[2] to see if he is at home. 12. When you come to see me, enter without knocking. 13. He did it without anyone's[3] knowing[4] that he had done it. 14. I will write to him as soon as I have spoken with my partner. 15. In order that you may understand me, I will repeat what I have said. 16. I will do it myself, unless you prefer to do it. 17. However good he may be, I do not like him. 18. Whoever it may be, let him come in. 19. Whenever you come, I shall be glad to see you. 20. He left quickly without anyone seeing him.

[1] *diré.* [2] *vaya.* [3] *nadie.* [4] *supiese.*

LESSON XXX

109. The Interrogative Pronouns in Spanish are the same as the relatives, except that they are accented:

qué, *what? which?*	**quién**, pl., **quiénes**, *who?*
cuál, pl., **cuáles**, *what? which?*	**cúyo**, –a, –os, –as, *whose?*
cuánto, –a, –os, –as, *how much? how many?*	

NOTE. — The interrogatives have the accent in indirect as well as in direct questions.

110. Qué is used both as an adjective and a pronoun. As an adjective it is used with nouns referring to either persons or things and is invariable for gender and number. As a pronoun it is neuter:

¿**Qué** colegio es éste?	*What college is this?*
¿**Qué** clase de guantes quiere Vd?	*What kind of gloves do you wish?*
¿**Qué** mujeres son aquéllas?	*What women are those?*
¿**Qué** quiere Vd.?	*What do you wish?*
¿En **qué** piensa V.?	*Of what are you thinking?*

(*a*) **Qué** is used in exclamation to mean '*how*', '*what*', '*what a*'. If an adjective follows a noun in an exclamation, its force may be emphasized by placing **tan** or **más** before the adjective:

¡**Qué** bueno es Vd.!	*How good you are!*
¡**Qué** hermoso día!	*What a beautiful day!*
¡**Qué** día tan (*or* más) hermoso!	*What a beautiful day!*

111. Quién is a pronoun and refers only to persons. It has a plural form, but is invariable for gender:

¿**Quién** es Vd.?	*Who are you?*
¿De **quién** hablas?	*Of whom are you speaking?*
¿Con **quién** trabaja Vd.?	*With whom do you work?*
¿A **quién** ve Vd?.	*Whom do you see?*
¿**Quiénes** son aquellos hombres?	*Who are those men?*

112. Cuál is used almost exclusively as a pronoun, and refers to either persons or things. It means '*which*' or '*what*', in the sense of '*which one*' of a number of things expressed or implied:

¿**Cuál** es su gracia de V.?	*What is your name?*
¿**Cuáles** de estos caballos son de V.?	*Which of these horses are yours?*
¿A **cuál** de sus discípulos prefiere Vd.?	*Which one of your pupils do you prefer?*
Hay un remedio. — ¿**Cuál**?	*There is a remedy. What?*

NOTE. — '*What*' followed by the verb '*to be*' and a predicate noun is to be translated by **cuál** unless the question is to be answered by a definition, in which case **qué** is used:

¿**Cuál** es la fecha de la carta?	*What is the date of the letter?*
¿**Qué** es la geografía?	*What is geography?*

113. Cúyo is rarely used. In its stead, **de quién** is employed:

¿De **quién** es este cortaplumas?	*Whose penknife is this?*
¿De **quién** son aquellas tierras?	*Whose lands are those?*

114. Cuánto is both an adjective and a pronoun. It agrees in gender and number with its noun:

¿**Cuánto** dinero tiene él?	*How much money has he?*
¿**Cuánta** tinta le queda a V.?	*How much ink have you left?*
¿**Cuántos** días tiene el año?	*How many days are there in a year?*
¿**Cuántos** tiene el mes de junio?	*How many has the month of June?*
¿**Cuántas** piezas tiene la casa?	*How many rooms has the house?*
¿**Cuánto** vale?	*How much is it worth?*
¡**Cuánto** lo siento!	*How sorry I am!*
¡**Cuánto** me alegro!	*How glad I am!*

EXERCISE XXX

caballero, m., *gentleman.*
cerveza, f., *beer.*
clase, f., *kind.*
descripción, f., *description.*
distar, *to be distant.*
fijar, *to fix;* —**se en,** *to notice.*
habitante, m., *inhabitant.*
kilómetro, m., *kilometer.*
limón, m., *lemon, lemonade.*
paja, f., *straw.*
precio, m., *price.*
probablemente, *probably.*
punto, m., *point;* **a —fijo,** *exactly.*
raro, –a, *strange, unusual.*
rincón, m., *corner.*
surtido, m., *stock, assortment.*
tardar, *to delay;* **¿cuánto tiempo tardará en . . .,** *how long will it take for . . .?*
telegrama, m., *telegram.*
tierra, f., *earth.*

PHRASE

poco más o menos, *almost.*

1. ¿Quién es aquel caballero que acaba de sentarse en la silla allí en el rincón? 2. No sé quién será; probablemente algún extranjero de los que visitan a Madrid en el verano. 3. ¡Qué modo tan raro de vestirse! — Sí; no me había fijado en eso. 4. ¿De qué país será? — Pide limón y cerveza. — ¡Qué cosa tan rara! 5. ¿En qué puedo servirle a V., caballero? 6. Quiero un sombrero de paja. — Tenemos un buen surtido de todas clases y a todos precios. 7. ¿Qué número lleva V.? — No sé a punto fijo, pero tengo la cabeza bastante grande. 8. ¿Qué es la geografía? — Es la descripción de la tierra. 9. ¿Por quién es esa novela que acaba de salir? 10. ¿A cuál de los autores modernos prefiere V.? 11. No sé cuál me gusta más; creo que prefiero a Valdés. 12. ¿Desde cuándo me espera V.? — Le espero a Vd. desde hace una hora. 13. ¿En cuánto tiempo llegaremos? — Debemos llegar dentro de una hora. 14. Cuánto hay de aquí a Madrid? — Dista de aquí unos treinta kilómetros poco más o menos. 15. ¿Cuánto tiempo tardará el telegrama en llegar a París? 16. ¿Cuál es la ciudad más grande de España? — Barcelona. 17. ¿Cuántos habitantes tiene? — Tiene más de quinientos mil. 18. ¿Y Madrid? ¿Cuántos tiene? — Tiene también más de quinientos mil, pero menos que Barcelona.

1. Who can those gentlemen be, who have just entered the café? 2. Wait until we see[1] what they order; then we shall know[2] where they come from. 3. Have you noticed their strange way of dressing? — In what way[3] does it seem strange to you? 4. He asked us how he could serve us. 5. What kind of a straw hat do you wish?[4] — I do not know exactly; show me something cheap. 6. Which of the novels of Valdés do you prefer? 7. I do not know which one I like best, but I do not like those that are written in the French manner. 8. How long have you studied Spanish? — For two or three months. 9. How long will it take us to finish the book? — Almost three weeks. 10. Whose is that large white house which has so many windows? 11. It belongs to Mr. Gonzales, to whose son I presented you yesterday. 12. How much did he pay for it? — I do not know what the price was. 13. Whom did you meet on the street yesterday? 14. If I should ask which is the best known Spanish book, what would you answer? 15. How many of you have read El Quijote? — So few? 16. By whom was it written? — It was written by Cervantes.

[1] *ver* (cf. 156). [2] *saber* (cf. 151). [3] *En qué.* [4] *desea.*

LESSON XXXI

115. Cardinal Numerals.

1	uno, una.	11	once	21	veinte y uno (veintiuno)
2	dos	12	doce	22	veinte y dos (veintidos)
3	tres	13	trece	30	treinta
4	cuatro	14	catorce	40	cuarenta
5	cinco	15	quince	50	cincuenta
6	seis	16	diez y seis	60	sesenta
7	siete	17	diez y siete	70	setenta
8	ocho	18	diez y ocho	80	ochenta
9	nueve	19	diez y nueve	90	noventa
10	diez	20	veinte	100	ciento, cien.

101 **ciento y uno**	500 **quinientos**	1000 **mil**
102 **ciento y dos**	600 **seiscientos**	1001 **mil y uno**
200 **doscientos**	700 **setecientos**	2000 **dos mil**
300 **trescientos**	800 **ochocientos**	1000000 **un millón**
400 **cuatrocientos**	900 **novecientos**	

(*a*) **Uno** loses the **o** before nouns. In compound numerals it loses the final vowel in both masculine and feminine forms:

cuarenta y **un** hombres,	*forty-one men.*
sesenta y **un** mujeres,	*sixty-one women.*

(*b*) **Cien** is used instead of **ciento** before a noun, before a qualifying adjective, and in large numbers. Multiples of **ciento** agree in gender with the following noun:

Se ahogaron **cien** caballos.	*A hundred horses were drowned.*
Cien valientes soldados.	*A hundred brave soldiers.*
Vale **cien** mil pesetas.	*It is worth a hundred thousand pesetas.*
Doscientos francos.	*Two hundred francs.*
Trescientas pesetas.	*Three hundred pesetas.*

(*c*) **Y**, '*and*', is used only before the last number of compound numerals:

dos mil trescientos sesenta **y** seis,	*two thousand three hundred and sixty-six.*

(*d*) The English use of hundred in dates and other large numbers is not permissible in Spanish:

mil novecientos diez,	*nineteen hundred and ten.*
mil sesenta y seis,	*ten hundred and sixty-six.*

(*e*) '*Half*' as a noun is **la mitad**; in calculations and as an adjective it is **medio, –a**:

la mitad de mis bienes,	*the half of my goods.*
cinco dúros y **medio,**	*five dollars and a half.*
una **media** hora,	*a half hour.*

(*f*) '*Both*' is **ambos,** without the article, or **los dos**:

ambos (**los dos**) hermanos, *both brothers.*

116. Time of Day is expressed in Spanish by the feminine singular and plural of the definite article, and the number of

hours and minutes; the words **hora** (or **horas**) and **minutos** being understood:

¿Qué hora es?	*What time is it?*
Es la una.	*It is one o'clock.*
Son las tres.	*It is three o'clock.*
Son las tres y diez (minutos).	*It is ten minutes past three.*
Son las tres y cuarto.	*It is a quarter past three.*
Son las tres y media.	*It is half past three.*
Son las tres menos veinte (minutos).	*It is twenty minutes to three.*
Son las tres menos cuarto.	*It is a quarter to three.*
A **las ocho** de la mañana.	*At eight o'clock in the morning.*
Son **las cinco** de la tarde.	*It is five o'clock in the afternoon.*
Antes de **las diez** de la noche.	*Before ten o'clock at night.*
A eso de **las once.**	*At about eleven o'clock.*

117. Age is expressed in Spanish by the verb **tener,** with a numeral and **años** (either expressed or understood):

¿Qué edad tiene V.? / **¿Cuántos años tiene V.?**	*How old are you?*
Tengo treinta años.	*I am thirty years old.*
Él tiene diez y ocho.	*He is eighteen.*

118. Ordinal Numerals.

1st	primero, –a	11th	undécimo, –a	21st	vigésimo primo, –a
2nd	segundo, –a	12th	duodécimo, –a	22nd	vigésimo segundo, –a
3rd	tercero, –a	13th	décimo tercio, –a	30th	trigésimo, –a
4th	cuarto, –a	14th	décimo cuarto, –a	40th	cuadragésimo, –a
5th	quinto, –a	15th	décimo quinto, –a	50th	quincuagésimo, –a
6th	sexto, –a	16th	décimo sexto, –a	60th	sexagésimo, –a
7th	séptimo, –a	17th	décimo séptimo, –a	70th	setuagésimo, –a
8th	octavo, –a	18th	décimo octavo, –a	80th	octogésimo, –a
9th	noveno, –a	19th	décimo nono, –a	90th	nonagésimo, –a
10th	décimo, –a	20th	vigésimo, –a	100th	centésimo, –a

(*a*) In general the ordinals are comparatively rare above **décimo,** being in most cases replaced by the cardinals.

(*b*) The ordinals up to eleven are used, as in English, in the titles of sovereigns, but without the article. **Carlos quinto,** *Charles the Fifth;* **Fernando séptimo,** *Ferdinand the Seventh.*

(*c*) After **primero** the cardinals are generally used to indicate the number of a volume, chapter, page, century, etc.; **tomo veinte,** *the twentieth volume*, **página diez y seis,** *the sixteenth page*; **el siglo diez y siete,** *the seventeenth century*.

119. Months. — The Spanish names are:

enero, *January*.	**mayo,** *May*.	**septiembre,** *September*.
febrero, *February*.	**junio,** *June*.	**octubre,** *October*.
marzo, *March*.	**julio,** *July*.	**noviembre,** *November*.
abril, *April*.	**agosto,** *August*.	**diciembre,** *December*.

120. Days of the Week. — The Spanish names are:

lunes, *Monday*.	**jueves,** *Thursday*.	**domingo,** *Sunday*.
martes, *Tuesday*.	**viernes,** *Friday*.	
miércoles, *Wednesday*.	**sábado,** *Saturday*.	

121. Date. — In giving the day of the month, the cardinals are used after **primero,** instead of the ordinals (as in English):

¿A cuántos (del mes) estamos? / **¿Qué día del mes es hoy?**	*What day of the month is it?*
Estamos a primero, a dos, a tres.	*It is the first, second, third.*
Hoy es día tres de enero.	*To-day is the third of January.*
¿En qué día (de la semana) estamos? / **¿Qué día es hoy?**	*What day of the week is it?*
Estamos en lunes, martes, etc.	*To-day is Monday, Tuesday,* etc.
Hoy es martes, tres de octubre.	*To-day is Tuesday, the third of October.*

EXERCISE XXXI

adelantarse, *to be fast* (of a watch or clock).
algo, *somewhat*.
atrasarse, *to be slow* (of a clock).
buque, m., *boat, vessel*.
centavo, m., *cent*.
dieron, 3rd plur. pret. of **dar,** *to give, strike* (cf. 142).
esquina, f., *corner*.
gabán, m., *overcoat*.
luego, *then, later*.
marcar, *to indicate*.
milla, f., *mile*.
piso, m., *story*.
pozo, m., *well, pit*.
profundidad, f., *depth*.
reloj, m., *watch, clock*.
torre, f., *tower*.

1. Tenga Vd. la bondad de decirme qué hora es en su reloj. — Son las tres y cuarto, pero mi reloj se adelanta un poco. 2. El mío se atrasa algo: marca las tres y hace algunos minutos dieron las tres en el reloj de la esquina. 3. ¿A qué hora quiere V. que venga a buscarle? — Venga V. a las nueve en punto. 4. Me levanté a las siete, almorcé a la una, y me acosté a las once de la noche. 5. ¿Cuántos años tiene su hermano de Vd? — Tiene veinte años. 6. ¿Vd. no tendrá tanta edad como él? — No; él tiene tres años más que yo. 7. Fernando séptimo era rey de España de 1789 a 1833. 8. Carlos quinto de Alemania era Carlos primero de España. 9. He leído hasta la página doscientos y una del tomo tres. 10. Hágame Vd. el favor de decirme a cuántos del mes estamos. — Hoy es viernes, tres de agosto. 11. El pozo tiene sesenta pies de profundidad. 12. Esta mesa es muy grande: tiene tres pies de ancho por cuatro de largo. 13. ¿Qué es ese edificio tan alto que se ve desde aquí? — Es la iglesia de San Pablo: la torre tiene ciento veinte y cinco pies de alto. 14. Mire Vd. este gabán; pagué diez y ocho duros por él y no encuentro quien me dé ocho. 15. ¿Tiene Vd. cigarros de a cinco centavos? — No; aquí no tenemos eso. 16. Aquí los más baratos cuestan diez centavos. 17. Primero dice una cosa y luego otra. 18. Yo llegué primero. 19. Este buque marcha de diez a once millas por hora. 20. Era un muchacho de diez o quince años. 21. La primera vez, en primer lugar, la segunda y tercera clase, el cuarto piso.

Oral. — Count from one to one hundred in Spanish. Give the multiplication table of two (dos por dos son cuatro, etc.). Give the Spanish for the following: 500, 1066, 900, 1492, 1776, 1550, 1909.

Translate into Spanish: How old is he? — He is thirty. What time is it? — It is a quarter after one; it is twenty minutes after one; it is half past one; it is twenty minutes to two; it is a quarter to two, it is two o'clock.

1. That dress cost two hundred and fifty pesetas. 2. There are sixty minutes in an hour. 3. I do not know[1] what day of the week it is. — To-day is Tuesday, the twenty-second of July. 4. Do me the favor to tell me what time it is. — It is twenty-five minutes past nine. 5. At twelve o'clock 700 soldiers marched through the street. 6. Alfonso the Twelfth of Spain died in 1885. 7. When were you born? — I was born on the 7th of August, 1876. 8. On the third of this month my father sent me sixty dollars. 9. I paid $35 for a suit, $6 for three shirts, $4 for a pair of shoes, and $4 for a hat. I have $11 left. 10. The train leaves for Madrid at exactly a quarter to ten. 11. Five years ago I was in Spain for the first time: since then I have been there twice. 12. That box is ten feet long and three feet wide. 13. She asked me to buy fifteen yards of silk for her, but she gave me only $10.

[1] *saber* (151).

LESSON XXXII

122. Indefinites. — Under this head are ranged a number of words which can not be classed among the other parts of speech because of their indeterminate character. They include the following:

alguien, *someone, somebody, anyone, anybody.*	**nadie,** *no one, nobody.*
algo, *something, anything.*	**nada,** *nothing.*
alguno, –a, –os, –as, *some, any, someone, anyone.*	**ninguno,** –a, –os, –as, *no, none, no one.*
otro, –a, –os, –as, *other.*	**cada,** *each.*
tal, –es, *such, such a, that.*	**mismo,** –a, –os, –as, *same, self.*
todo, –a, –os, –as, *all, every, entire.*	

123. Alguien and **algo** are pronouns and are invariable. **Alguien** refers only to persons, and **algo** is neuter. They are not used in negative sentences.

Alguien viene; **alguien** llama.	*Somebody is coming; is knocking.*
¿Ha encontrado Vd. a **alguien**?	*Did you meet anybody?*

¿Quiere Vd. **algo**?	*Do you want anything?*
¿Ha dicho Vd. **algo**?	*Did you say anything?*
Le contaré **algo** interesante.	*I will tell you something interesting.*

(*a*) **Algo** is also used adverbially with adjectives in the sense of *somewhat:*

Debe ser **algo** semejante.	*It must be somewhat similar.*

124. Alguno, –a, –os, –as is used both as an adjective and a pronoun. It varies in gender and number and refers either to persons or things. As an adjective, it loses the final **o** of the masculine singular. As a pronoun, it means '*someone*', '*somebody*', '*anyone*', '*anybody*'. As a pronoun referring to a person, it differs from **alguien** in that it refers to someone of a definite group of persons:

Necesito **algún** dinero.	*I need some money.*
De **alguna** importancia.	*Of some importance.*
Voy a comprar **algunos** libros.	*I am going to buy some books.*
Tengo **algunas** compras que hacer.	*I have some purchases to make.*
Algunos de mis amigos.	*Some of my friends.*
Algunas son bonitas, otras no.	*Some are pretty, some are not.*
Alguno llama a la puerta.	*Someone is knocking at the door.*

(*a*) **Alguno** is sometimes used in negative sentences or after **sin,** but must in such cases follow the noun. This construction is emphatic negation:

No es posible entender palabra **alguna.**	*It is imposible to hear a single word.*
Sin duda **alguna.**	*Without any doubt* (*whatever*).

125. Nadie and **nada** are negatives of **alguien** and **algo,** respectively. They may stand alone, or either before or after a verb. If they stand alone or before the verb, no further negative is required. If they stand after the verb, **no** must precède the verb (cf. 60).

(*a*) **Nada** is used adverbially with adjectives to mean *by no means, not at all:*

No era **nada** agradable.	*It was by no means agreeable.*

126. Ninguno, -a, -os, -as, is the negative of **alguno.** Like **nadie** and **nada,** it may stand alone or before or after the verb. Like **alguno,** it loses the final vowel of the masculine singular when used as an adjective:

De **ningún** modo. De **ninguna** manera.	*By no means.*
No recibió **ninguna** carta.	*He received no letter.*
Ninguno lo sabe.	*No one knows it.*
Ningunos de estos sombreros me gustan.	*I like none of these hats.*

(*a*) All of these words, **nadie, nada,** and **ninguno,** are used instead of the corresponding affirmatives in sentences where the sense is negative:

Trabaja con más ahinco que **nadie.**	*He works with more zeal than anybody.*
¿Quién entiende **nada** de eso?	*Who can understand anything of that matter?*
Es imposible conseguir **ninguna** ventaja.	*It is impossible to obtain any advantage.*

127. Todo, -a, -os, -as is used both as an adjective and a pronoun. With a substantive without the article it means '*every*'; with the article or possessive it means '*the whole*', '*all the*'; in the plural it means '*all*', '*every*':

Todo hombre, *every man.*	**Todos los** hombres, *all men.*
Toda ciudad, *every city.*	**Toda la** ciudad, *the whole city.*
Todos los días (todas las noches).	*Every day (night).*
Todos dicen lo mismo.	*They all say the same thing.*

128. Otro, -a, -os, -as is used either as an adjective or a pronoun. It is never preceded by the indefinite article, but may be used with the definite article, the demonstratives, and the indefinites:

El otro sombrero me pertenece a mí.	*The other hat belongs to me.*
Necesito **otra** media libra.	*I need another half pound.*
Los otros no sirven para nada.	*The others are worthless.*

Déme **otros** dos.	*Give me two more.*
El uno llevaba gorra, **el otro** sombrero.	*One wore a cap, the other a hat.*
Este otro no vale nada.	*This other one is worth nothing.*
No habla **otro** idioma que el francés.	*He speaks no language other than French.*

129. Tal, tales is also used both as an adjective and a pronoun. It is not used with the indefinite article except in the phrase **un tal,** '*a certain*':

Tal hombre.	*Such a man.*
No hice **tal** (*or* **tal** cosa).	*I did no such thing.*
Aborrezco **tales** cosas.	*I hate such things.*
El capitán era un **tal** García.	*The captain was a certain García.*

130. Cada is an invariable adjective. It always stands before the word it modifies, and is never preceded by the article. It is followed by the plural only when the word it modifies is limited by a numeral: Each.

Cada hombre, **cada** mujer.	*Each man, each woman.*
Cada día, **cada** noche.	*Each day, each night.*
A **cada** instante.	*At each instant.*
Cada tres días.	*Every three days.*
Hay una pluma para **cada** uno.	*There is a pen for each one.*

(a) **Cada** with **uno** or **cual** is used as a pronoun. It means *each one, everyone:*

Cada uno debe vivir según sus medios.	*Everyone should live according to his means.*
Cada cual tomó una silla.	*Each one took a chair.*

131. Mismo, a, os, as is used both as an adjective and a pronoun:

El mismo lo ha hecho.	*He himself has done it.*
El mismo ha venido.	*The same one has come.*
Yo he recibido **las mismas** noticias.	*I have received the same news.*

(*a*) **Mismo** is used as an intensive with nouns as well as pronouns. In this use it may stand either before or after the word it modifies:

Era **la misma** modestia.	*She was modesty itself.*
El rey **mismo** nos ha honrado.	*The king himself has honored us.*
Esta misma noche.	*This very night.*
Este mismo instante.	*This very instant.*

(*b*) Similarly **mismo** is used to intensify adverbs:

Ahora **mismo.**	*Just now.*
Hoy **mismo.**	*This very day.*

EXERCISE XXXII

ausencia, f., *absence.*
crear, *to create.*
cucharita, f., *teaspoon.*
descansar, *to rest.*
durante, *during.*
enterarse, *to learn, become informed.*
faltar, *to lack.*
motivo, m., *reason.*
perecer, *to perish.*
seguro, –a, *safe, secure.*
simpático, –a, *attractive, congenial.*
texto; libro de —, *textbook.*
ve, 2nd sg. impv. of **ir,** *to go* (cf. 145).

1. ¿Ha venido alguien durante mi ausencia? — No, señor; nadie ha venido. 2. Alguien llama a la puerta: ve a ver quién es. 3. Es el cartero. Cartero, ¿me trae V. algo? 4. No, señor; no hay nada para Vd. 5. ¿Necesitas algún dinero? — Sí; tengo que comprar algunos libros de texto y me faltan dos duros. 6. Me siento algo cansado: voy a mi cuarto a descansar un rato. 7. Jamás hombre alguno me fué tan simpático como aquel muchacho. 8. ¡Pobre amigo mío! Habrá perecido sin duda alguna. 9. Algunas de estas muchachas parecen extranjeras. 10. Sí, lo son, señor; algunas son Inglesas, otras Francesas, pero las más son Españolas. 11. ¿Se puede entrar? — De ninguna manera. 12. No hay ninguna casa donde se pueda estar más seguro que en la mía. 13. No tengo ningún motivo para dudar de lo que V. me dice. 14. No hay nada que no haya sido creado por Dios. 15. No diga nada a nadie; no quiero que nadie se entere del asunto. 16. Se fué sin decir nada que pueda ofender a nadie. 17. Cada uno tiene su gusto, y éste es el mío. 18. Se debe

tomar una cucharita de esta medicina cada dos horas. 19. Cada uno para sí y Dios para todos. 20. Le he buscado por toda la ciudad, pero no le he hallado en ninguna parte. 21. Yo no haré eso. — Sí, señor; V. lo hará y no más tarde que ahora mismo. 22. ¿Cuándo se va Vd.? — Esta misma mañana.

ORAL. — *Translate into Spanish:* Did anyone speak? No one. Who came? No one. He does nothing. Did you say anything? Nothing. Did anyone lose a pencil? It must have been some one of these boys. Some day, every day, each day, all men, every man, each man. Such a thing, such a man.

1. Some one is coming. Who can it be? 2. It is probably some child who is returning from school.[1] 3. Shall I find anyone in this town who will aid[2] me? 4. There is no one who will help[2] a stranger. 5. Some of the men seem to be Spaniards, others are Americans. 6. He will come to see you some day. 7. There is no one who can do this as well as you. 8. Do you wish something which is dear, or something cheap? 9. Show me something which is cheap. 10. Not one of these articles is worth what you ask for it. 11. Each day he asks for some thing. I am surprised that he has not asked for anything to-day. 12. Not one of these men is ready, and I told them all[3] to be ready at nine o'clock. 13. This paper is published every day in the year. 14. The same man came to see us yesterday. 15. Let each one take what is his. 16. It is impossible to do anything. 17. You are not at all[4] safe here; some one will see you. 18. The street cars[5] pass through this street every five minutes. 19. Everyone thought the same thing; no one believed that he was guilty. 20. It was impossible to learn anything of the affair; no one would talk about it.

[1] Use def. art. [2] subj. [3] *les . . . a todos.* [4] *del todo.* [5] *El tranvía.*

LESSON XXXIII

132. The Infinitive in Spanish corresponds generally to the several forms of the English infinitive, *'love'*, *'to love'*, *'loving'*, and may be modified by an adverb. As a verbal noun, it stands in various relations, with or without a preposition, and may be construed with or without the article, or with an adjective:

el **correr,** el baile, y los ejercicios gimnásticos,	*running, dancing, and gymnastic exercises.*
este **bailar** tan gracioso,	*this very graceful dancing.*
el mucho **beber,**	*hard drinking.*

133. The infinitive may be used directly or with a preposition.

A. The direct infinitive is used: —

(1) In the relation of subject and predicate with **ser** and other intransitives:

Decir y **hacer** son dos cosas.	*Saying and doing are two things.*
Querer es **poder.**	*To will is to be able.*
Esto no es **vivir.**	*This is not living.*

(2) As the object of certain verbs when the subject of the second verb is the same as that of the first. Among the verbs which take the direct infinitive as object are:

conseguir, *to succeed in.*	**hacer,** *to make, cause.*	**pensar,** *to intend.*
creer, *to believe.*	**lograr,** *to succeed in.*	**poder,** *to be able.*
deber, *ought.*	**mandar,** *to command.*	**sentir,** *to perceive.*
dejar, *to allow.*	**oír,** *to hear.*	**ver,** *to see.*

B. The infinitive with a preposition may be either dependent on other words, or used independently.

(1) A preposition is required by many nouns, adjectives, and verbs to express their relation to the following infinitive. No rules can be formulated as to what prepositions should be used with these words. They must be learned by observation. A

list of a few of the more common verbs and the prepositions by which they are commonly followed is given for convenience.

(*a*) Verbs followed by **de**:

acabar, *to have just.*	**arrepentirse**, *to repent.*	**dispensar**, *excuse.*
acordarse, *to remember.*	**cesar**, *to cease.*	**jurar**, *to swear.*
alegrarse, *to be glad.*	**dejar**, *to fail, leave off.*	**tratar**, *to try.*
	desistir, *to desist.*	

(*b*) Verbs followed by **a**:

acertar, *to happen, succeed.*	**ir**, *to go.*
aprender, *to learn.*	**negarse**, *to refuse.*
apresurarse, *to hasten.*	**obligar**, *to oblige.*
atreverse, *to dare.*	**ponerse**, *to begin.*
comenzar, *to commence.*	**prepararse**, *to prepare.*
convidar, *to invite.*	**principiar**, *to begin.*
echar, *to begin.*	**salir**, *to go out.*
empezar, *to begin.*	**venir**, *to come.*
enseñar, *to teach.*	**volver**, *to do again* (cf. Vocab. XXIV).
invitar, *to invite.*	

(*c*) Verbs followed by **en**:

consentir, *to consent.*	**ocuparse**, *to busy oneself.*	**tardar**, *to delay.*
empeñarse, *to insist.*	**pensar**, *to think of.*	**vacilar**, *to hesitate.*

(*d*) **Con** is used after **soñar**, '*to dream of*', and **contentarse**, '*to content oneself*'.

(2) Without a governing word, the infinitive with a preposition usually corresponds to the English verbal form in *-ing:*

sin **hablar**, *without speaking.*	después de **comer**, *after eating.*
antes de **acostarse**, *before going to bed.*	en vez de **llamárme**, *instead of calling me.*

134. Especially to be noted is the use of **al** (**a el**) with the infinitive, to introduce a statement of time or circumstance. It is to be translated into English by '*on*' and the verbal form in *-ing*, or by a temporal clause introduced by '*when*':

al ver esto,	*on seeing this.*
al llegar allí,	*on arriving there.*

Al concluirse la guerra, volvió a casa.	*When the war was over, he returned home.*
Al entrar yo en el wagón, me senté en el rincón.	*When I entered the carriage, I sat down in the corner.*

NOTE. — The infinitive with **al** may have as subject either a noun or a pronoun.

135. The infinitive is used with **para** to express purpose; with **por**, to express motive or cause:

Comemos **para** satisfacer el hambre.	*We eat to satisfy our hunger.*
Trabajaba **por** confundir su contrario.	*He worked to confound his adversary.*
Por ser viejo no tiene fuerzas.	*Being old, he is not strong.*

NOTE. — The infinitive is sometimes used in exclamations or instead of an imperative.

¡Callar!	*Hush!*
¡No **correr!**	*Do not run!*
Dirigirse al portero.	*Inquire of the porter.*

EXERCISE XXXIII

abandonar, *to abandon.*
cerrar, *to shut, close.*
ciudadano, m., *citizen.*
descortesía, f., *impoliteness, incivility.*
despedirse, *to take leave.*
emoción, f., *emotion.*
ligero, -a, *slight.*
manifestar, *to show.*
matrimonio, m., *marriage.*
secreto, m., *secret.*

1. En el ligero temblar de sus manos al despedirse, se manifestaba su emoción. 2. El levantarse temprano es muy bueno para la salud. 3. Sería fácil hacer esto, si tuviésemos dinero. 4. No es bueno beber agua tan fría por el calor que hace. 5. Amar a su patria es el deber de cada buen ciudadano. 6. Lo que necesito es descansar. 7. Lo hizo en un abrir y cerrar de ojos. 8. Señor, creo conocerle. 9. Es posible, pero no me acuerdo de haber encontrado a Vd. antes. 10. Permítale Vd. entrar, pero no deje Vd. de cerrar la puerta cuando haya en-

trado. 11. Acabo de recibir una carta de una señora, quien me pide cinco duros. 12. Acertó a pasar por allí el hijo del rey, quien la pidió en matrimonio. 13. Se empeñó en hacerlo él mismo, y se le dejó hacer. 14. Al salir a la calle, encontré a varios amigos míos. 15. ¿Qué va él a pensar al saber que Vd. le ha abandonado? 16. Me voy a la ciudad por ver esos grandes edificios que hay allí. 17. A no ser por Vd., hubiera perdido tal vez la vida. 18. ¿Y qué piensas hacer ahora? — Irme de aquí lo más pronto posible. 19. Llamar, que es hora de comer. 20. Reírse o hablarse en secreto en presencia de otros es descortesía.

ORAL. — *Translate into Spanish:* After dining, without thinking, before getting up, upon going to bed, to have just eaten, to remember to do a thing, to cease to speak, to try to learn, to dare to go out alone, to repent of having said a thing, to learn to read, to begin to study, upon hearing that, on leaving town.

1. It is incivility to seat oneself when others are standing.[6] 2. Neither[1] is it proper[2] to turn one's back on[3] another. 3. It is useless to try to do that now. 4. To teach is to learn. 5. It is not good[4] for the health to drink too much tea and coffee. 6. I hear him coming up the stairs; we shall soon[5] see[8] him enter the room. 7. When do you intend to start for Europe? 8. I am glad to have met you, sir. 9. Do not fail to come to see me when you pass[6] this way. 10. It is beginning to rain; we shall have a bad night. 11. He has invited me to dine with him today. 12. Do not consent to do that; do not think of[7] doing it. 13. He got up and went out of the room without speaking. 14. On entering the house, I found no one there. 15. When we saw that, we hastened to call a servant. 16. Room for rent. Inquire of the porter. 17. No one enters without speaking to the porter. 18. He turned his head, in order not to see me. 19. We should content ourselves with doing whatever we can.

[1] *tampoco.* [2] *está bien.* [3] *a.* [4] *bueno.* [5] Put first in clause. [6] Subj. [7] *en.* [8] *ver* (156).

LESSON XXXIV

136. The Gerund in Spanish corresponds to the English verbal form in *–ing*, when not used substantively. It cannot be used as the object of any preposition except **en.** In use it is (1) adverbial, denoting cause, manner, or means; or (2) it states an additional detail or circumstance. It is to be translated into English by '*on*', '*by*', or '*while*', and the verbal form in *–ing*, or by '*when*' or '*as*', and a personal verb:

(1) **Haciendo** esto muestra su caridad.	*By doing this, he shows his charity.*
El muchacho venía **corriendo** por la calle abajo.	*The boy came running down the street.*
Pasa el día en su gabinete **leyendo y escribiendo.**	*He spends the day in his study, reading and writing.*
Explicó su conducta **manifestando** que no me había reconocido.	*He explained his conduct by declaring that he had not recognized me.*
(2) **Creyendo** que él estaba fuera, no me fuí a su casa.	*Believing that he was not at home, I did not go to his house.*
Mira este bastón; huele **frotándolo.**	*Look at this cane; it smells when you rub it.*
Me apretó la mano, **pugnando** por no reír.	*He clasped my hand, struggling not to laugh.*
Estando **comiendo,** oímos un ruido en la calle.	*While we were eating, we heard a noise in the street.*

(*a*) The pronoun object of a gerund is appended to it, if the gerund stands alone. If the gerund is used with **estar** or a similar verb, the object pronoun may either precede the finite verb or be appended to the gerund:

Viéndo**los** venir hacia mí, me eché a correr.	*Seeing them come toward me, I started to run.*
Me estás matando, *or* estás matándo**me.**	*You are killing me.*

(*b*) The gerund is freely used with **estar, ir, andar, seguir, quedar,** and similar verbs, to express continuative or progressive action:

Me están **llamando.**	*They are calling me.*
Siguió **nevando** toda la noche.	*It continued snowing all night.*
Va **siendo** peor.	*It keeps getting worse.*
Veníamos **hablando** de eso.	*We were talking of that as we came.*
Se quedó **leyendo.**	*He kept on reading.*

137. The Past Participle is used with **estar** and a number of other verbs, such as **quedar, venir, hallarse, andar,** and **verse,** to express condition. In this use the participle agrees with the noun qualified:

Los soldados están **heridos.**	*The soldiers are wounded.*
Quedé **estupefacto.**	*I was astounded.*
Vino **armado.**	*He was armed.*
Se vió **obligado** a ceder.	*He was obliged to yield.*

NOTE. — Such verbs, when used with the participle, retain in part their meaning, but are to be translated by the verb *to be.*

(1) The past participle may be used absolutely with a noun or pronoun to denote time or circumstance:

Dicho esto, se presentó al rey el papel.	*With these words* (lit. *this said*), *the paper was presented to the king.*
Terminado el desayuno, salimos a la calle.	*Breakfast over, we went out on the street.*

(*a*) Note the order. The participle always precedes the substantive.

(2) The participle in this construction may be modified by an adverb or a preposition, which then precedes the participle:

Después de firmada la paz.	*After peace was signed.*
Antes de dada la orden.	*Before the order was given.*

(3) **Recientemente,** '*recently*' becomes **recién** before a participle:

el recién llegado,	*the new arrival.*

EXERCISE XXXIV

apreciable, *esteemed.*
arroyo, m., *brook.*
boda, f., *marriage.*
cayendo, ger. of **caer,** *to fall* (141).
celebrar, *to celebrate, perform* (a ceremony).
condujo, 3rd sg. pret. of **conducir,** *to lead, conduct* (cf. 144).
cuidado, m., *care, attention.*
descubrir, *to discover.*
diciendo, ger. of **decir,** *to say, tell* (cf. 143).
dijo, 3rd sg. pret. of **decir** (cf. 143).
dirección, f., *direction.*
llave, f., *key.*
malgastar, *to waste.*
marcha, f., *march;* **ponerse en —,** *to start, to start out.*
molino, m., *mill.*
movimiento, m., *movement.*
noticia, f., *news.*
obtener, *to obtain.*
pone, 3rd sg. pres. indic. of **poner,** *to put, place* (cf. 149).
príncipe, m., *prince.*
propone, 3rd sg. pres. indic. of **proponer,** *to propose* (cf. 149).
pusimos, 1st plur. pret. of **poner** (cf. 149).
respuesta, f., *reply, answer.*
rueda, f., *wheel*
satisfecho, –a, p.p. of **satisfacer,** *satisfied.*
S. S. S. = **Su Seguro Servidor,** a phrase used at the end of a letter corresponding to the English "*Very truly yours.*"

1. Comprendí lo que había sucedido, y corriendo a ella le pregunté si podía ayudarla. 2. No creí que V. me descubriera, me dijo riendo. 3. Luego que recibas el dinero, llévalo corriendo al banco. 4. Diciéndome estas palabras, el extranjero salió del cuarto. 5. Contestando a su apreciable carta del 24 del corriente, siento mucho que no podamos hacer el negocio que V. nos propone. 6. No me es posible seguir escribiendo. 7. Esperando una pronta respuesta, quedo de V., S. S. S. 8. El agua, cayendo sobre la rueda del molino, la pone en movimiento. 9. Sirviéndonos de guía, ella nos condujo por toda la casa. 10. Nos pusimos en marcha, tomando la dirección de la casa. 11. Vimos un pájaro bebiendo en un arroyo. 12. Luego de celebrada la boda, los recién casados viajan durante algunas semanas. 13. Los que malgastan su dinero siendo jóvenes, no tienen nada siendo viejos. 14. Poco satisfecho el príncipe con tales noticias, comprendió que eran cuantas pudiera obtener 15. No bien

entrado el guardia, obligó a los otros a salir y cerró la puerta con llave. 16. Dos horas después de recibida la carta anunciándome la muerte de mi amigo, salí para su pueblo. 17. A pesar de los cuidados de su madre, el pobre muchacho se va poniendo cada vez peor. 18. La novela era tan interesante que me quedé leyendo toda la noche.

1. Replying to your letter of the 25th of last month, permit me to say that we should lose money by selling the article at[1] that price. 2. Seeing her weeping, I approached and asked her what was the matter. 3. If he does such things when he is a boy, what will he not do when he is a man? 4. I continued writing all night, although my hand kept getting worse. 5. He is always talking of what he is going to do 6. While preparing to go out, we heard some one enter the house. 7. Believing him (to be) an honest man, we lent him the money. 8. Feeling[2] no better the following day, I called a doctor. 9. It continued raining, in spite of the fact[3] that it was cold. 10. I left him in his room writing. 11. We have many of the letters written. 12. The letters having been finished, we closed them and sent them to the post office. 13. My brother having arrived, we went at once to the house. 14. Scarcely had I told him of it, when I repented of having done so. 15. Dinner being finished, the gentlemen went into the garden to smoke. 16. Finding himself alone in the room, he began to examine the papers which were on the table. 17. Having examined them all, he went out, locking the door behind him. 18. While I was alone in the house, I heard someone knocking at the street door.

[1] *en.* [2] Reflex. [3] *a pesar de que.*

LESSON XXXV

IRREGULAR VERBS

138. Andar, *to go, be.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund.	P. Part.
andar	ando	anduve	andando	andado
	andas	anduviste		
Fut.	anda	anduvo		
andaré	andamos	anduvimos		
	andáis	anduvisteis		
Cond.	andan	anduvieron		
andaría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	andaba	anduviese		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	ande	anduviera		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	anda andad	anduviere		

Note. — **Andar** means *to go* in the general sense of locomotion. It is, consequently, used in speaking of animals and inanimate objects. It is applied to the movement of persons only when this is spoken of without reference to purpose or direction.

(1) Some phrases with **andar**:

andar a pie, *to go on foot.*
andar a caballo, *to ride horseback.*
andar a mula, *to ride on a mule.*
andar en coche, *to ride in a carriage.*

139. Asir, *to seize.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
asir	asgo	así	asiendo	asido
	ases			
Fut.	ase			
asiré	asimos			
	asís			
Cond.	asen			
asiría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
asía	asiese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
asga	asiera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
ase asid	asiere

140. Caber, *to be contained in.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Pres. Part.	P. Part.
caber	quepo	cupe	cabiendo	cabido
	cabes	cupiste		
Fut.	cabe	cupo		
cabré	cabemos	cupimos		
	cabéis	cupisteis		
Cond.	caben	cupieron		
cabría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
cabía	cupiese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
quepa	cupiera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
cabe cabed	cupiere

(1) Some phrases with **caber**:

no caber en sí de gozo, *to be overjoyed, be beside oneself.*

No cabe duda. *There is no doubt.*

No cabe en lo posible. *It is impossible.*

141. Caer, *to fall.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
caer	caigo	caí	cayendo	caído
	caes	caíste		
Fut.	cae	cayó		
caeré	caemos	caímos		
	caéis	caísteis		
Cond.	caen	cayeron		
caería				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
caía	cayese
Pres. Subj.	**Cond. Subj.**
caiga	cayera
Impv.	**Fut. Subj.**
cae caed	cayere

(1) Some phrases with **caer**:

caer en la cuenta, *to realize, understand.*
caer malo (enfermo), *to fall sick.*
caer bien, *to fit, be becoming.*
Las ventanas caen al río. *The windows overlook the river.*

142. Dar, *to give.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
dar	doy	di	dando	dado
	das	diste		
Fut.	da	dió		
daré	damos	dimos		
	dais	disteis		
Cond.	dan	dieron		
daría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
daba	diese
Pres. Subj.	**Cond. Subj.**
dé des dé demos deis den	diera
Impv.	**Fut. Subj.**
da dad	diere

(1) Some phrases with **dar**:

dar de comer, *to feed.*
dar los buenos días (las buenas noches), *to bid you good day (good night).*
Lo mismo me da. *It is all one to me.*
dar con, *to meet, find.*
dar un paseo, una vuelta, *to take a walk.*
dar en with infin., *to persist in.*
darse prisa, *to hurry.*
Han dado las dos. *It has struck two o'clock.*

EXERCISE XXXV

atrás, *backwards;* **hacia —,** *backwards.*
hacia, *toward.*
limosna, f., *alms.*
necesidad, f., *necessity.*
nuevo; de —, *again.*
paso, m., *step.*
pena, f., *pain;* **dar —,** *to be pitiful.*
piso, m., *floor, walking.*
prisa, f., *haste.*
saco, m., *bag.*
suelo, m., *ground, floor.*

1. El niño está cansado; no puede andar más. 2. Mi reloj no andaba bien: se atrasaba un minuto por hora. 3. Mi amigo y yo anduvimos a pie; mi madre y mis hermanos anduvieron en coche. 4. Ande yo caliente y ríase la gente. 5. Andemos más despacio: no hay necesidad de darnos tanta prisa. 6. ¿Cuánto cree V. que cabrá en este saco? — Cabrá en él cuanto V. quiera llevar consigo. 7. Yo no quepo en esta silla: es una silla de niños. 8. ¿Creyó V. que cupiese tanta gente en este edificio? 9. No cabe en lo posible que él ame a esa mujer. 10. No te caigas, Juan; el piso está muy malo. 11. Si yo me cayese, V. me ayudaría, ¿no es verdad? 12. Sin duda, pero mejor es que tengas cuidado para que no te caigas. 13. Se cayó de nuevo y ya no se levantó. 14. Se dejó caer hacia atrás y hubiera dado en el suelo, si yo no le hubiese sostenido. 15. Si V. da un paso más, se caerá en el agua. 16. Por la tarde dimos un paseo por el pueblo. 17. Por mucho que lo busco, no doy con el tal libro. 18. No te des tanta prisa; hay tiempo para todo. 19. Me costó mucho trabajo dar con la calle donde vivía. 20. Lo mismo me da, si V. lo hace o no. 21. Han dado las tres en el reloj de la torre. 22. Da pena verle andando por las calles pidiendo limosna. 23. Nos dió las buenas noches y se fué a casa.

1. Let us not hurry so; my foot hurts. 2. This man would go ten kilometers to see a bullfight. 3. The prince went on, until he came to a distant country. 4. Why do you walk when you can take a carriage? 5. That clock is not going; it stopped at four o'clock. 6. Would you have believed that this room would hold so many persons? 7. The trunk will not hold all

these books.[1] 8. There is no doubt that he is a good man. 9. He was beside himself with joy at receiving such a present. 10. What should we do, if I fell ill? 11. Take care that you do not fall ill. 12. The letter fell from his hands to the floor. 13. I was surprised at seeing her drop[2] into a chair. 14. When I saw her there, I realized that I had been deceived. 15. The clock had just struck twelve. 16. This door opens into[3] a bedroom. 17. I often take a walk in the evening. 18. He took two steps backward and fell into the water. 19. I bade them good night and took leave of them. 20. He gave us to understand that he had not yet finished the work. 21. I am going to take a walk: will you accompany me? 22. He bade us good night before we reached the church.

[1] Put first. [2] *dejarse caer.* [3] *da a.*

LESSON XXXVI

IRREGULAR VERBS (*Continued*)

143. Decir, *to say.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
decir	**digo**	**dije**	**diciendo**	**dicho**
	dices	**dijiste**		
Fut.	**dice**	**dijo**		
diré	**decímos**	**dijimos**		
	decís	**dijisteis**		
Cond.	**dicen**	**dijeron**		
diría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	decía	**dijese**		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	diga	**dijera**		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	di decid	**dijere**		

NOTE. — Compounds of **decir** usually have the full impv., **dice**. **Bendecir** and **maldecir** have the regular future, conditional and participial forms. **Bendito** and **maldito** are hardly used except as adjectives.

(1) Some phrases with **decir**:

querer decir, *to mean.*
por mejor decir, *more properly speaking.*
es decir, *that is to say.*
decir al oído, *to say in a whisper.*
decir que sí (**no**), *to say yes* (*no*).
decir para sí, *to say aside.*
como quien dice, *so to speak.*

144. Ducir is no longer used as an independent verb. It occurs, however, in a number of compounds. **Conducir,** *to lead, conduct,* may serve as a paradigm.

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
conducir	conduzco	conduje	conduciendo	conducido
	conduces	condujiste		
FUT.	conduce	condujo		
conduciré	conducimos	condujimos		
	conducís	condujisteis		
COND.	conducen	condujeron		
conduciría				
	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.		
	conducía	condujese		
	PRES. SUBJ.	COND. SUBJ.		
	conduzca	condujera		
	IMPV.	FUT. SUBJ.		
	conduce conducid	condujere		

145. Ir, *to go.*

INFIN.	PRES. IND.	PRETERITE	GERUND	P. PART.
ir	voy	fuí	yendo	ido
	vas	fuiste		
FUT.	va	fué		
iré	vamos	fuimos		
	vais	fuisteis		
COND	van	fueron		
iría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
iba	fuese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
vaya	fuera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
ve vamos id	fuere

(1) Some phrases with **ir**:

ir por, *to go for.*
ir a pie, *to go on foot.*
¡**Vaya V. con Dios!** *Farewell.*
ir a caballo, *to go on horseback.*
ir en coche, *to go in a carriage.*
¡**Vaya!** *I should think so. Well.*
¡**Vamos!** *Well. Now. The idea. I should think so.*

146. Oír, *to hear.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
oír	oigo	oí	oyendo	oído
	oyes	oíste		
Fut.	oye	oyó		
oiré	oímos	oímos		
	oís	oísteis		
Cond.	oyen	oyeron		
oiría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
oía	oyese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
oiga	oyera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
oye oíd	oyere

147. Placer, *to please,* is of infrequent use. It is seldom used except in the third person singular.

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
placer	place	plugo plació	placiendo	
Fut.				
placerá				
Cond.				
placería				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
placía	pluguiese

Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
plazca (plegue)	pluguiera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
plegue plega	pluguiere

EXERCISE XXXVI

buzón, m., *mail box.*
campesino, m., *peasant.*
contrario, –a, *contrary.*
conversación, *f.*, *conversation.*
despacho, m., *office.*
forastero, –a, m. and f., *stranger.*
grito, m., *cry.*
paso; de —, *on the way.*
prado, m., *meadow.*
producir, *to produce.*
ruido, m., *noise, sound.*
terreno, m., *land.*
traducir, *to translate.*
trigo, m., *wheat.*
vecino, m., *neighbor.*
vuelta, f., *turn.*

1. Ahora dices esto y antes dijiste lo contrario. 2. Se lo diré a V., cuando estemos solos. 3. Si me hubiesen dicho antes lo que querían, ya estaría hecho. 4. No digan VV. eso: no es verdad. 5. Pues si le dijéramos a V. la verdad, no nos creería. 6. Me dijo al oído que aquéllos eran forasteros. 7. ¿Cómo se conduce este muchacho? — Hasta ahora se ha conducido muy bien. 8. Traduje la carta al español y la eché al buzón. 9. ¿No cree V. que este terreno produzca mejor trigo que el de mi vecino? 10. Mañana iré a visitar a mi amigo que está enfermo. 11. Fuimos anoche al teatro y nos divertimos mucho. 12. El campesino iba montado en una mula. 13. Si fuésemos al despacho más temprano ¿no podríamos visitarle de paso? 14. Juan fué a verle ayer y no le dejaron entrar en la habitación. 15. ¿A dónde iremos? — Vamos a dar una vuelta por los prados. 16. Oigo ruido de conversación; ¿quién estará hablando a estas horas? 17. ¿Oyó V. el grito? — Sí; lo oí. 18. He oído hablar esa lengua y es muy hermosa. 19. Se oyen desde lejos los gritos que dan esos niños. 20. Oyeron de pronto el ruido de una puerta que se abría. 21. No se vayan VV.: oigan lo que voy a decirles.

1. You tell me that it is, and he tells me that it is not; who is right? 2. Do not tell me that you cannot go any farther; we still have ten miles to go. 3. Always tell the truth; the truth is better[1] than a lie. 4. Whisper it to me, so that the others may[2] not hear. 5. What did he say? — You would not believe it, if I told you. 6. I am translating a letter into French. 7. Translate from[3] page 20 to[3] page 23. 8. This land produces the best wheat in the country. 9. He conducted me to the door and left me there. 10. I was going to the theater when I met him. 11. Tell her that you are going to-morrow, and she will go with you. 12. Let us go home now; it is getting late. 13. Go to the café; perhaps you will find him there. 14. Well, it is time to go to bed. 15. What is the noise I hear? — I do not hear anything. 16. Did you hear that door open? 17. We hear all languages spoken[4] in New York.[5] 18. Listen to what I have to tell you. 19. If they heard a noise at night, what would they think? 20. Can one hear the music from here? 21. They were about to leave when they heard the sound of an approaching carriage.

[1] *vale más.* [2] *puedan.* [3] *desde . . . hasta.* [4] Infin. [5] Put first.

LESSON XXXVII

IRREGULAR VERBS *(Continued)*

148. Poder, *to be able.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
poder	puedo	pude	pudiendo	podido
	puedes	pudiste		
Fut.	puede	pudo		
podré	podemos	pudimos		
	podéis	pudisteis		
Cond.	pueden	pudieron		
podría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	podía	pudiese		

Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
pueda	pudiera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
None	pudiere

(1) Some phrases with **poder**:

no poder más, *to be unable to do more.* **no poder menos de**, *to be unable to refrain from.*

149. Poner, *to place, put.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
poner	pongo	puse	poniendo	puesto
	pones	pusiste		
Fut.	pone	puso		
pondré	ponemos	pusimos		
	ponéis	pusisteis		
Cond.	ponen	pusieron		
pondría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	ponía	pusiese		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	ponga	pusiera		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	pon poned	pusiere		

(1) Some phrases with **poner**:

ponerse, *to become, put on.* El sol se pone. *The sun is setting.*
ponerse a, *to set about, begin.* poner la mesa, *to set the table.*

150. Querer, *to wish, want, love.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
querer	quiero	quise	queriendo	querido
	quieres	quisiste		
Fut.	quiere	quiso		
querré	queremos	quisimos		
	queréis	quisisteis		
Cond.	quieren	quisieron		
querría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	quería	quisiese		

Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
quiera	quisiera
Impv.	**Fut. Subj.**
quiere	quisiere
quered	

(*a*) The conditional subjunctive of **querer** is used as a mild expression of wish:

Quisiera hablar con Vd. *I should like to speak with you.*

151. **Saber,** *to know, know how.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
saber	sé	supe	sabiendo	sabido
	sabes	supiste		
Fut.	sabe	supo		
sabré	sabemos	supimos		
	sabéis	supisteis		
Cond.	saben	supieron		
sabría				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.		
	sabía	supiese		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	sepa	supiera		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	sabe sabed	supiere		

(*a*) **Saber** means 'to know,' 'have knowledge.' **Conocer** means 'to know' in the sense of 'be acquainted with', 'be familiar with'.

(*b*) **Saber** followed by an infinitive means 'to know how'; hence, 'to be able'.

No sé leer. *I cannot read.*

152. **Salir,** *to go* or *come out.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
salir	salgo	salí	saliendo	salido
	sales	saliste		
Fut.	sale	salió		
saldré	salimos	salimos		
	salís	salisteis		
Cond.	salen	salieron		
saldría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
salía	saliese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
salga	saliera
Impv.	Fut. Sub.
sal salid	saliere

EXERCISE XXXVII

aceptar, *to accept.*
boca, f., *mouth.*
empleo, m., *position.*
encuentro; a mi (su, etc.) —, *to meet me* (*him*, etc.).
listo, –a, *ready*
oferta, f., *offer.*
rápido, m., *express train.*
solicitar, *to ask for.*
vacante, *open, vacant* (of a position).

1. Si V. me pudiese prestar cinco pesos, me haría un gran favor. 2. Él les dijo algunas palabras que no pude entender. 3. Si yo hubiera podido hacerlo, lo hubiera hecho. 4. Trataron de levantar al caído, pero no pudieron. 5. Mañana es domingo, podré ir al campo: los días de la semana no puedo. 6. Estoy rendido; no puedo más. Déjenme VV. 7. Ponga V. los papeles sobre la mesa. 8. Ella pone la mesa; la comida debe estar servida a las seis y media. 9. El tren se puso en marcha y estábamos en camino para Madrid. 10. Iremos cuando se ponga el sol. — Pues ya se ha puesto. 11. Me puse pálido de miedo al oír tales palabras de su boca. 12. Nos pusimos a hablar con el recién llegado. 13. No sabemos lo que quiere decir este hombre. 14. Quise hablar, pero no pude. 15. Sepa V. que no quiero ni querré aceptar su oferta. 16. Anoche encontré a mi amigo y supe por él que V. estaba enfermo. 17. Sé hacer esta cosa, pero no puedo hacerla ahora porque no tengo tiempo. 18. Si supiese que este empleo estuviese vacante, lo solicitaría. 19. Me pongo los guantes y el sombrero, cuando salgo a la calle. 20. Todos mis amigos salieron a mi encuentro. 21. Salía todos los días a las ocho. 22. Mañana saldré en el rápido para Nueva York. 23. No pude menos de amar a la niña.

1. I was able to hear only a few words of the conversation. 2. We shall be able to tell you to-morrow when we shall be able to go. 3. They could not have done it, if they had wished. 4. She was unable to say who the man was. 5. Take off that hat and put this one on. 6. Here is the newspaper; I will place it on the table. 7. Set the table quickly; we are in a hurry. 8. At what time does the sun set to-day? 9. We began to talk of the friends we had known. 10. The train is starting; hurry or we shall miss[1] it. 11. She turned red with[2] shame. 12. The table is set. Are you ready? 13. What does this word mean? Ask your father. 14. We have asked him, and he would not tell us. 15. I have always liked books and shall always like them. 16. Can you speak French? — Yes; I can speak it pretty[3] well. 17. You are ten years old and cannot read. 18. What would you do, if you knew that you were going to die to-morrow? 19. I learn from a friend of yours that you are going to Europe. 20. Do not go out now; it is going to rain. 21. I went out on the street to meet him. 22. The train will leave the station at ten o'clock in the morning. 23. Let us go out to take a walk this afternoon. 24. They could not help laughing at us.

[1] *perder.* [2] *de.* [3] *bastante.*

LESSON XXXVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS *(Continued)*

153. Traer, *to bring, wear.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
traer	**traigo**	**traje**	**trayendo**	**traído**
	traes	**trajiste**		
Fut.	**trae**	**trajo**		
traeré	**traemos**	**trajimos**		
	traéis	**trajisteis**		
Cond.	**traen**	**trajeron**		
traería				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
traía	trajese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
traiga	trajera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
trae traed	trajere

154. Valer, *to be worth.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
valer	valgo	valí	valiendo	valido
	vales			
Fut.	vale			
valdré	valemos			
	valéis			
Cond.	valen			
valdría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
valía	valiese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
valga	valiera
Impv.	Fut. Subj.
val(e) valed	valiere

(1) Some phrases with **valer**:

valer más, *to be better.* ¡Válgame Dios! *Good Heavens!*

155. Venir, *to come.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
venir	vengo	vine	viniendo	venido
	vienes	viniste		
Fut.	viene	vino		
vendré	venimos	vinimos		
	venís	vinisteis		
Cond.	vienen	vinieron		
vendría				

Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj.
venía	viniese
Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.
venga	viniera

Impv.	Fut. Subj.
ven venid	viniere

156. Ver, *to see.*

Infin.	Pres. Ind.	Preterite	Gerund	P. Part.
ver	veo	vi	viendo	visto
	ves	viste		
Fut.	ve	vió		
veré	vemos	vimos		
	veis	visteis		
Cond.	ven	vieron		
vería				
	Impf. Ind.	Impf. Subj		
	veía	viese		
	Pres. Subj.	Cond. Subj.		
	vea	viera		
	Impv.	Fut. Subj.		
	ve ved	viere		

157. Yacer, *to lie*, is rarely used except in epitaphs. In the present indicative and subjunctive it may have as stem, before **o** and **a**, **yazc-**, **yazg-**, or **yag-**. The other forms are regular.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

burro, m., *donkey.*
cultivar, *to cultivate.*
esconder, *to hide.*
junto, **-a**, *together.*
lista, f., *list;* — **de platos**, *bill of fare, menu.*
mozo, m., *waiter.*
ropa, f., *clothing.*

1. Mozo, tráigame V. la lista de platos. 2. Se la traeré a V. en seguida, señor. 3. Me pidió que se le trajera un libro y se lo traje. 4. Si me hubiese pedido otra cosa, se la hubiera traído. 5. No traigo más ropa de la que traje el año pasado: es la misma que me pongo todos los días. 6. ¿Vió V. ayer a los hijos de su vecino? 7. No, señor, no los vi, pero los veré esta noche en el teatro. 8. Dígale V., cuando le vea, que venga a verme mañana por la tarde. 9. Pregunté si podía verle a aquella hora.

10. ¿Cuánto vale éste? — Ése, se lo daré por ocho pesetas. 11. Más vale pájaro en mano que ciento volando. 12. Esta casa valdrá unos cinco mil pesos cuando esté construida. 13. Los campos valdrían mucho más si estuviesen bien cultivados. 14. ¡Válgame Dios! ¡pero qué casa! 15. Él viene hoy a comer con nosotros, ¿no es verdad? 16. Vendrá si no hace demasiado frío. 17. Si él viniese a saber dónde me escondo, todo estaría perdido. 18. Si VV. hubiesen venido más temprano, hubiéramos podido irnos juntos. 19. Venga V. a mi casa mañana, y veremos lo que se puede hacer. 20. El soldado venía montado en un burro y vestido de luto.

1. The waiter brought the bill of fare, and we chose what we wanted to eat. 2. We said to him: "Bring us coffee with milk and a little bread." 3. If I brought you a book from the library, would you read it? 4. Yes, but bring me something which is interesting. 5. I am bringing you the money which you lent me last month. 6. You would have done me a great favor, if you had brought it a little sooner.[1] 7. Whom did you see in the theater last night? 8. There were many people there, and I saw no one whom I knew.[2] 9. I see some one coming; hide yourself quickly. 10. The new house can be seen from here when the weather is fine. 11. We shall see Charles to-morrow, and we will tell him to come and[3] see you. 12. I showed him the paper, that he might see that I was telling him the truth. 13. How much is this horse worth? — It is worth two hundred dollars, but I will sell it to you for one hundred and fifty. 14. It will be worth twenty-five dollars more within a year. 15. A little is better than nothing. 16. Good heavens, man, what are you doing? 17. When are you coming to visit us? 18. I will come to-morrow if I can. 19. Come whenever you wish. 20. Come, children, it is time to go to bed.

[1] *antes.* [2] Impf. [3] *a.*

APPENDIX

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

The sense of a word is often modified in Spanish by the use of diminutive or augmentative endings. These endings are characteristic of familiar style, and are employed when the quality which they imply is not to be especially emphasized. As in other languages, the augmentatives may also express depreciation; and the diminutives, affection or worthlessness. These suffixes cannot be used at random. By no means all of them can be appended to a given noun, and considerable familiarity with the language is required to employ them correctly.

Diminutives. — The principal diminutive endings are **–ito, –illo,** and **–uelo,** all with feminines ending in **–a.** **Ito** is the most frequent and expresses the idea of 'pretty', 'sweet', 'dear', 'nice' as well as 'little'. **Illo** is simply diminutive in force, and **–uelo** expresses contempt.

(1) In general, if a noun ends in a consonant or an accented vowel, the suffixes are appended directly; if the noun ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the suffix:

árbol, *tree.*	**arbolito,** *little tree.*
papá, *papa.*	**papaíto,** *dear papa.*
cigarro, *cigar.*	**cigarillo,** *little cigar, cigarette.*

(2) These suffixes become **–cito, –cillo,** and **–zuelo** when used with polysyllabics ending in **–n** or **–r.**

autor, autor-cillo, *minor author.*	**doctor, doctor-zuelo,** *poor doctor.*
ladrón ladron-zuelo, *petty thief.*	**joven, joven-cito,** *stripling.*

NOTE. — The shorter form is sometimes found with **jardín,** and always with **señor:**

jardín, jardin-ito, *little garden.*	**señor, señor-ito,** *young gentleman.*

(3) The suffixes become **–ecito, –ecillo,** and **–ezuelo**: —

(a) With monosyllables ending in a consonant:

flor, flor-ecita, *little flower.*
luz, luc-ecita, *little light.*
voz, voc-ecita, *sweet little voice.*
rey, rey-ezuelo, *poor little king.*

(b) With polysyllabics ending in **–e**:

pobre, pobr-ecillo, *poor little fellow.* **conde, cond-ecito,** *little count.*

(c) With words of two syllables containing one of the diphthongs *ei, ie, ue,* and ending in **–a** or **–o**:

nuevo, nuev-ecito, *quite new.*
piedra, piedr-ecilla, *pebble.*
cuerno, cuern-ezuelo, *little horn.*
viejo, viej-ecito, *nice little old man.*

Augmentatives. — The principal augmentatives are **–on, –azo, –ote, –acho,** and **–ucho,** all with feminine endings in **–a.** **On** and **–azo** are usually simply augmentative; **–ote** implies depreciation; and **–acho** and **–ucho** express contempt and worthlessness:

silla, sill-ón, *big easy chair.*
pícaro, picar-ón, *great rascal.*
palabra, palabr-ota, *oath.*
hombre, hombr-ón, *big man.*
animal, animal-ote, *big clumsy animal.*
casa, cas-ucha, *shanty.*

The suffixes **–azo** and **–ada** often denote a blow or injury caused by the object named by the noun:

bala, *bullet.*
cañón, *cannon.*
látigo, *whip.*
puñal, *dagger.*
lanza, *lance.*
cuchillo, *knife.*
balazo, *bullet shot* or *wound.*
cañonazo, *cannon shot.*
latigazo, *a cut with a whip.*
puñalada, *dagger thrust.*
lanzada, *a spear thrust.*
cuchillada, *knife thrust.*

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

This list contains the irregular verbs commonly met in modern Spanish but does not include those having regular orthographic changes. The number refers to the paragraph where the irregularity is explained.

abrir, 55, Note, 2.
absolver, 89, *B*, 2.
abstenerse, 70.
abstraer, 153.
acertar, 89, *A*, 1.
acordarse, 89, *A*, 2.
acostarse, 89, *A*, 2.
acrecentar, 89, *A*, 1.
adestrar, 89, *A*, 1.
adherir, 93.
adormir, 93, 2.
adquirir, 89, Note 1.
aducir, 144.
advertir, 93.
alentar, 89, *A*, 1.
almorzar, 89, *A*, 2.
alongar, 89, *A*, 2.
amoblar, 89, *A*, 2.
amolar, 89 *A*, 2.
andar, 138.
antedecir, 143.
anteponer, 149.
antever, 156.
apostar, 89, *A*, 2.
apretar, 89, *A*, 1.
aprobar, 89, *A*, 2.
argüir, 95, *A*.
arrendar, 89, *A*, 1.
arrepentirse, 93.
ascender, 89, *B*, 1.
asentar, 89, *A*, 1.
asentir, 93.
aserrar, 89, *A*, 1.
asir, 139.
asoldar, 89, *A*, 2.
asonar, 89, *A*, 2.
atender, 89, *A*, 1.
atenerse, 70.
atentar, 89, *A*, 1.
aterrar, 89, *A*, 1.
atestar, 89, *A*, 1.
atraer, 153.
atravesar, 89, *A*, 1.
atronar, 89, *A*, 2.
atribuir, 95.
avenir, 155.
aventar, 89, *A*, 1.
avergonzar, 89, *A*, 2.

bendecir, 143, Note.

caber, 140
caer, 141.
calentar, 89, *A*, 1.
cegar, 89 *A*, 1.
cernir, 89, Note 1.
cerrar, 89, *A*, 1.
ceñir, 94.
cimentar, 89, *A*, 1.
colar, 89, *A*, 2.
colegir, 94.
colgar, 89, *A*, 1.
comenzar, 89, *A*, 1.
competir, 94.
componer, 149.
comprobar, 89, *A*, 1.
concebir, 94.
concernir, 89, Note 1.
concertar, 89, *A*, 1.
concluir, 95.
concordar, 89, *A*, 1.
condescender, 89, *B*, 1.
condolerse, 89, *B*, 2.
conducir, 144.
conferir, 93.
confesar, 89, *A*, 1.
conmover, 89, *B*, 2.
conseguir, 94.
consentir, 93.
consolar, 89, *A*, 2.
consonar, 89, *A*, 2.
constituir, 95.
construir, 95.
contar, 89, *A*, 2.
contender, 89, *B*, 1.
contener, 70.
contorcerse, 89, *B*, 2.
contradecir, 134.
contraer, 153.
contrahacer, 71.
contraponer, 149.
contravenir, 155.
controvertir, 93.
contribuir, 95.
convenir, 155.
convertir, 93.
corregir, 94.
costar, 89, *A*, 2.
cubrir, 55, Note 2.

dar, 142.
decaer, 141.
decir, 143.
deducir, 144.
defender, 89, *B*, 1.
deferir, 93.
degollar, 89, *A*, 1.
demoler, 89, *B*, 2.
demostrar, 89, *A*, 2.
denegar, 89, *A*, 1.
denostrar, 89, *A*, 2.
deponer, 149.
derretir, 94.
derrocar, 89, *A*, 2.
desalentar, 89, *A*, 1.
desandar, 138
desapretar, 89, *A*, 1.
desaprobar, 89, *A*, 2.
desasir, 139.
desavenir, 155.
descolgar, 89, *A*, 2.
descollar, 89, *A*, 2.
descomponer, 149.
desconcertar, 89, *A*, 2.
descontar, 89, *A*, 2.
desconvenir, 155.
descubrir, 55, Note 2.
desdecir, 143.
desempedar, 89, *A*, 1.
desenterrar, 89, *A*, 1.
desenvolver, 89, *B*, 2
deshacer, 71.
deservir, 94.
desgobernar, 89, *A*, 2.
deshelar, 89, *A*, 1.

desmedirse, 94.
desmentir, 93.
desoír, 146.
desolar, 89, *A*, 2.
despedir, 94.
despertar, 89, *A*, 1.
desplegar, 89, *A*, 1.
despoblar, 89, *A*, 2.
desterrar, 89, *A*, 1.
destruir, 95.
detener, 70.
detraer, 153.
devolver, 89, *B*, 2.
deferir, 93.
digerir, 93.
discernir, 89, Note 1.
disconvenir, 155.
discordar, 89, *A*, 2.
disentir, 93.
disminuir, 95.
disolver, 89, *B*, 2.
disonar, 89, *A*, 2.
disponer, 149.
distender, 89, *B*, 1.
distraer, 153.
distribuir, 95.
divertir, 93.
doler, 89, *B*, 2.
dormir, 93.

elegir, 94.
embestir, 94.
empedrar, 89, *A*, 1.
empezar, 89, *A*, 1.
encender, 89, *B*, 1.
encerrar, 89, *A*, 1.
encomendar, 89, *A*, 1.
encentar, 89, *A*, 1.
engreír, 94, *A*, Note.
engrosar, 89, *A*, 2.
enmendar, 89, *A*, 1.
entender, 89, *B*, 1.
enterrar, 89, *A*, 1.
entreoír, 146.
entreponer, 149.
entretener, 70.
entrever, 156.
envolver, 89, *B*, 2.
equivaler, 154.
erguir, 94, Note.
errar, 89, Note 3,1.
escarmentar, 89, *A*, 1.
escribir, 55, Note 2.
esforzar, 89, *A*, 2.
estar, 65.
estregar, 89, *A*, 1.
excluir, 95
expedir, 94.
exponer, 149.
extender, 89, *B*, 1.
extraer, 153.

forzar, 89, *A*, 2.
fregar, 89, *A*, 1.
freír, 94, *A*, Note.

gemir, 94.
gobernar, 89, *A*, 1.

haber, 67.
hacer, 71.
helar, 89, *A*, 1.
henchir, 94.
hender, 89, *B*, 1.
herir, 93.
herrar, 89, *A*, 1.
hervir, 93.
huir, 146.
holgar, 89, *A*, 2.
hollar, 89, *A*, 2.

impedir, 94.
imponer, 149.
imprimir, 55, Note 2.
improbar, 89, *A*, 2.
incensar, 89, *A*, 1.
incluir, 95.
inducir, 144.
inferrir, 93.
inquirir, 89, Note 1.
interponer, 149.
instruir, 95.
intervenir, 155.
introducir, 144.
invernar, 89, *A*, 1.
invertir, 93.
investir, 94.
ir, 145.

jugar, 89, Note 1.

llover, 89, *B*, 2.

maldecir, 143, Note.
malherir, 93.
maltraer, 153.
manifestar, 89, *A*, 1.
mantener, 70.
medir, 94.
mentar, 89, *A*, 1.
mentir, 93.
merendar, 89, *A*, 1.
moblar, 89, *A*, 2.
moler, 89, *B*, 2.
morder, 89, *B*, 2.
morir, 93.
mostrar, 89, *A*, 2.
mover, 89, *B*, 2.

negar, 89, *A*, 1.
nevar, 89, *A*, 1.

obtener, 70.
oír, 146.
oler, 89, Note 2.
oponer, 149.

pedir, 94.
pensar, 89, *A*, 1.
perder, 89, *B*, 1.
perseguir, 94.
pervertir, 93.
placer, 147.
plegar, 89, *A*, 1.
poblar, 89, *A*, 2.
poder, 148.
poner, 149.
poseer, 56(4).
posponer, 149.
predecir, 143.
preferir, 93.
prender, 55, Note 1.
preponer, 149.
presentir, 93.
presuponer, 149.
prevenir, 155.
prever, 156.
probar, 89, *A*, 2.
producir, 144.
proferir, 93.
promover, 89, *B*, 2.
proponer, 149.
proseguir, 94.
provenir, 155.

quebrar, 89, *A*, 1.
querer, 150.

recaer, 141.
recomendar, 89, *A*, 1.
recomponer, 149.
recontar, 89, *A*, 2.
reconvenir, 155.
recordar, 89, *A*, 2.
recostar, 89, *A*, 2.
reducir, 144.
reelegir, 94.
referir, 93.
reforzar, 89, *A*, 2.
regar, 89, *A*, 1.
regir, 94.
regoldar, 89, *A*, 2.
rehacer, 71.
rehollar, 89, *A*, 2.

reír, 94, *A*, Note.
remendar, 89, *A*, 1.
rementir, 93.
remoler, 89, *B*, 2.
remorder, 89, *B*.
remover, 89, *B*, 2.
rendir, 94.
renegar, 89, *A*, 1.
renovar, 89, *A*, 2.
reñir, 94.
repetir, 94.
replegar, 89, *A*, 1.
reponer, 149.
reprobar, 89, *A*, 2.
reproducir, 144.
requebrar, 89, *A*, 1
requerir, 93.
resalir, 152.
resentirse, 93.
resolver, 89, *B*. 2.
resollar, 89, *A*, 2.
resonar, 89, *A*, 2.
restituir, 95.
restregar, 89, *A*, 1.
retemblar, 89, *A*, 1.
retener, 70.
retorcer, 89, *B*, 2.
reventar, 89, *A*, 1.
revolver, 89, *B*, 2.
rodar, 89, *A*, 2.
rogar, 89, *A*, 2.
romper, 55, Note 1.

saber, 151.
salir, 152.
satisfacer, 70.
seguir, 94.
sembrar, 80, *A*, 1.
sentar, 89, *A*, 1.
sentir, 93.
ser, 65.
servir, 94.
sobrevenir, 155.
soler, 89, *B*, 2.
soltar, 80, *A*, 2.
sonar, 89, *A*, 2.
sostener, 70.
sugerir, 93.
suponer, 149.
sustituir, 95.

temblar, 89, *A*, 1.
tener, 70.
teñir, 94.
traducir, 144.
traer, 153.
trocar, 89, *A*, 2.
tronar, 89, *A*, 2.
tropezar, 89, *A*, 1.

valer, 154.
venir, 155.
ver, 156.
vestir, 94.
volar, 89, *A*, 2.
volcar, 89, *A*, 2.
volver, 89, *B*, 2.

zaherir, 93.

SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, to; — **fin de que,** in order that.
abandonar, to abandon.
abogado, *m.* lawyer.
abominable, abominable.
aborrecer, to hate.
abril, *m.* April.
abrir, to open.
acá, here.
acabar, to finish; — **de,** to have just.
acerca de, about, concerning.
acercarse, to approach.
aceptar, to accept.
acero, *m.* steel.
acertar, to happen, succeed.
acompañar, to accompany.
acordarse, to remember.
acostarse, to go to bed, lie down.
actor, *m.* actor.
adelantarse, to gain; (*of a watch*) be fast.
adquirir, to acquire.
advertir, to warn, notice.
afeitarse, to shave.
agosto, *m.* August.
agradable, agreeable. [for.
agradecer, to be grateful for, thank
agricultura, *f.* agriculture.
agua, *f.* water.
águila, *f.* eagle.
ahí, there.
ahinco, *m.* zeal.
ahogar, to choke, drown.
ahora, now.
al, to the.
alabar, to praise.
alcanzar, to reach, hand.
alcoba, *f.* bedroom.
alegrarse, to be glad, be happy.
alegre, happy, gay, cheerful.
alemán, -a, German.
Alemán, -a, *m. and f.* German, German woman.
Alemania, *f.* Germany.
Alfonso, *m.* Alphonso.
algo, something, anything, somewhat.
algodón, *m.* cotton.
alguien, someone.
algún (o), -a, some, someone.
alma, *f.* soul.
almorzar, to eat luncheon, take luncheon.
alquilar, to rent. [top.
alto, -a, high, tall, loud; **lo —,** the
allá, there; **más —,** beyond.
allí, there.
amable, pleasant, kindly.
amar, to love.
ambos, both.
amenazar, to threaten.
americano, -a, American.
Americano, -a, *m. and f.* American man *or* woman.
amigo, -a, *m. and f.* friend.
ancho, -a, broad, wide.
andar, to walk, go, be.
anoche, last night.
antes, before, formerly; — **de,** before; — **que,** before; — . . . **que,** rather than; — **de ayer,** the day before yesterday.
antiguamente, formerly.
Antonio, Anthony.
anunciar, to announce.
año, *m.* year; **el — que viene,** next year.
apenas, scarcely, hardly.
aplaudir, to applaud.
apreciable, esteemed. [to.
aprender, to learn; — **a,** to learn
apresurarse, to hasten.
apretar, to press, tighten, squeeze.
apto, -a, suited, fitted for.

aquél, –la, that, that one.
aquel, –la, that.
aquí, here; **por —,** this way.
árbol, *m.* tree.
ardentísimo, –a, very ardent.
ardiente, ardent.
armado, –a, armed.
artículo, *m.* article.
arrepentirse, to repent.
arriba, above, up, high.
arroyo, *m.* rivulet, brook.
así, so, thus.
asiento, *m.* seat.
asir, to seize.
asunto, *m.* affair, business, subject.
atento, –a, attentive, polite.
atrás, back, behind, backward; **hacia —,** backwards.
atrasarse, to fall behind; (*of a clock*) lose, be slow.
atravesar, to cross.
atreverse, to dare.
aun (*or, after a verb* **aún**), yet, still.
aunque, although.
ausencia, *f.* absence.
autor, *m.* author.
ave, *f.* bird, fowl.
averiguar, to ascertain.
ayer, yesterday; **antes de —,** the day before yesterday.
ayudar, to aid, help.
azúcar, *m. and f.* sugar.
azul, blue.

B

bailar, to dance.
baile, *m.* dance.
bajar, to go down, take down.
bajo, –a, low, base.
banco, *m.* bank.
bañar, to bathe; **—se,** to bathe oneself.
barato, –a, cheap.
barba, *f.* beard, chin.
bastante, enough, rather, quite.
bastón, *m.* cane.
batirse, to fight.
beber, to drink.
bello, –a, beautiful.
biblioteca, *f.* library.
bicicleta, *f.* bicycle.
bien, well; **no —,** scarcely, as soon as.
bienes, goods, possessions.
blanco, –a, white.
boca, *f.* mouth.
boda, *f.* wedding, marriage.
bolsa, *f.* purse.
bolsillo, *m.* pocket.
bondad, *f.* goodness, kindness.
bonito, –a, pretty.
bosque, *m.* wood, forest.
botella, *f.* bottle.
botica, apothecary's shop, drug store.
Brasil, *m.* Brazil.
breve, short.
broma, *f.* joke.
bueno, –a, good.
bullir, to boil.
buque, *m.* ship.
burro, *m.* donkey.
buscar, to look for, seek.
buzón, *m.* letter box.

C

caballero, *m.* gentleman.
caballo, *m.* horse; **a —,** on horseback.
cabello, *m.* hair.
caber, to be contained in.
cabeza, *f.* head.
cada, each; **— cual,** each one, every one.
caer, to fall; **— en la cuenta,** to realize, understand; **— bien,** to fit, be becoming; **— a,** to overlook.
café, *m.* coffee, café.
caja, *f.* box.
calendario, *m.* calendar.
cálido, –a, hot.
caliente, hot.
calor, *m.* heat; **tener —,** to be warm (*of persons*); **hacer —,** to be hot (*of weather*).
callar, to be silent.
calle, *f.* street.
cama, *f.* bed.
cambiar, to change.

camino, *m.* road.
camisa, *f.* shirt.
campesino, *m.* peasant.
campo, *m.* field, country (*as distinguished from city*).
Canadá, *m.* Canada.
canción, *f.* song.
cansado, –a, tired; **ser —,** to be tiresome.
cantar, to sing.
caoba, *f.* mahogany.
capital, *f.* capital.
capitán, *m.* captain.
cara, *f.* face.
cárcel, *f.* prison, jail.
caridad, *f.* charity.
Carlos, *m.* Charles.
carne, *f.* meat.
caro, –a, dear, expensive.
carta, *f.* letter.
cartero, *m.* postman.
carrera, *f.* course (*of study*).
casa, *f.* house; **en —,** at home, **a —,** to one's home.
casarse, to get married, marry.
caso, *m.* case, matter; **en ese —,** in that case.
castaño, *m.* chestnut tree.
castigar, to punish.
católico, –a, Catholic.
catorce, fourteen.
causa, *f.* cause; **a — de,** because of, on account of.
caza, *f.* hunt.
ceder, to yield.
celebérrimo, –a, very famous.
celebrar, to celebrate, perform.
célebre, celebrated.
celos, *m.* jealousy; **tener —,** to be jealous.
celoso, –a, jealous.
centavo, *m.* cent.
centésimo, hundredth.
centígrado, centigrade.
cerca, near; **— de,** near.
cereza, *f.* cherry.
cero, zero.
cerveza, *f.* beer.
cerrar, to close, shut.
cesar, to cease.
ciego, –a, blind.
ciento *or* **cien,** hundred.
cierto, –a, certain.
cigarro, *m.* cigar.
cinco, five.
cincuenta, fifty
citar, to cite, quote.
ciudad, *f.* city.
ciudadano, –a, *m. and f.* citizen.
claro, –a, clear.
clase, *f.* kind, class.
cobarde, *m.* coward.
cocina, *f.* kitchen.
cocinera, *f.* cook.
coche, *m.* coach, carriage.
coger, to catch, take hold of, take.
cojo, –a, lame.
colegio, *m.* academy, school, college.
colocar, to place.
comedor, *m.* dining room.
comenzar, to commence.
comer, to eat, dine.
comerciante, *m.* merchant.
comida, *f.* dinner, meal, food.
cómo, how?
como, as.
cómodo, –a, comfortable, convenient.
compasión, *f.* pity.
compra, *f.* purchase, marketing.
comprar, to buy.
comprender, to understand.
con, with; **— tal que,** provided that.
concebir, to conceive.
conceder, to grant.
concluir, to finish.
conducir, to lead.
conducta, *f.* conduct.
confesar, to confess.
confianza, *f.* confidence.
confundir, to confound.
conmigo, with me.
conocer, to know, become acquainted with.
conocido, *m.* acquaintance.
conseguir, to succeed in.
consejo, *m.* advice.
consentir, to consent.
consigo, with him.
constipado, *m.* cold.
construir, to construct, build.

consultar, to consult.
contar, to count, relate, tell; — **con,** to count upon, reckon.
contentarse, to be contented, content oneself.
contento, –a, happy, contented, pleased with.
contestar, to answer, reply.
contigo, with you.
continuar, to continue.
contrario, –a, contrary.
contrario, *m.* adversary.
conversación, *f.* conversation.
convertir, to convert.
convidar, to invite.
convocar, to call together, convoke.
corazón, *m.* heart.
Córdoba, Cordova.
cortaplumas, *m.* penknife.
cortar, to cut.
cortés, polite.
corto, –a, short.
corregir, to correct.
correo, *m.* mail, post office.
correr, to run.
corriente, current, present; **el —,** the present month.
cosa, *f.* thing, matter.
costar, to cost.
costoso, –a, expensive.
crear, to create.
creer, to believe, think.
criado, –a, *m. and f.* servant.
crítico, –a, critical.
cuadrado, –a, square.
cuadro, *m.* picture.
cual, which; **el (la, los, las) —(es),** who, which, whom; **cada —,** each one.
cuál, –es, what? which?
cualquier(a), any, whoever.
cuándo, when?
cuando, when.
cuánto, –a, how much? how many?
cuanto, how much, as much, all the, all that; — **más . . . (tanto) más,** the more . . . the more; **en —,** as soon as; — **antes,** as soon as possible.
cuarenta, forty.
cuarto, *m.* room.
cuarto, fourth.
cuatro, four.
cubrir, to cover.
cuchara, *f.* spoon; — **para sopa,** soup spoon.
cucharada, *f.* spoonful; **cucharadita,** teaspoonful.
cucharita, *f.* teaspoon.
cuchillo, *m.* knife.
cuello, *m.* neck, collar.
cuenta, *f.* account, bill.
cuerpo, *m.* body.
cuidado, *m.* care.
culpa, *f.* fault, blame.
culpable, guilty.
cultivar, to cultivate.
cura, *m.* priest.
curiosidad, *f.* curiosity.
cuyo, –a, whose, of which.
cúyo, –a, whose?

CH

charlar, to gossip.
China, *f.* China.
chocolate, *m.* chocolate.

D

daño, *m.* harm, hurt.
dar, to give; (*of a clock*) strike; — **con,** to meet, find; —**se prisa,** to hurry.
de, of, from, about, concerning, by, than; — **a,** at.
debajo de, beneath, under.
deber, to owe, ought, be obliged to.
décimo, tenth.
decir, to say.
dedo, *m.* finger.
defecto, *m.* fault.
defender, to defend.
defensa, *f.* defence.
dejar, to leave, allow, permit.
del, of the.
delante, ahead; — **de,** in front of, before, facing.
delicioso, –a, delicious.
delinquir, to offend.
demasiado, too much, too.
dentro, within, in; — **de,** in, within.

derecho, –a, right; **a la derecha,** to the right.
desagradable, disagreeable, unpleasant.
desayuno, *m.* breakfast.
desayunarse, to breakfast.
descansar, to rest.
descortesía, *f.* impoliteness, incivility.
descripción, *f.* description.
descubir, to discover.
desde, from, since.
desear, to desire, want, wish.
deseo, *m.* wish.
desertar, to desert.
desistir, to desist.
desorden, *m.* disorder.
despacio, slowly.
despacho, *m.* office.
despedirse, to take leave.
despertarse, to awaken.
después, afterwards; — **de,** after; — **que,** after.
destruir, to destroy.
detalle, *m.* detail.
detras de, behind.
devolver, to return.
día, *m.* day; **al — siguiente,** on the following day.
dicho, *p.p. of* **decir.**
diciembre, *m.* December.
diente, *m.* tooth.
diez, ten.
difícil, difficult.
dificultad, *f.* difficulty.
dinero, *m.* money.
Dios, *m.* God.
dirección, *f.* direction.
dirigir, to direct; —**se al portero,** to inquire of the porter.
discípulo, –a, *m. and f.* pupil.
discurso, *m.* talk, discourse, speech
dispensar, to excuse, pardon.
distar, to be distant.
distinguir, to distinguish.
distintamente, distinctly.
divertir, to amuse.
dividir, to divide.
doce, twelve.
docena, *f.* dozen.
dolar, *m.* dollar.
doler, to pain, hurt.
dolor, *m.* pain; — **de cabeza,** headache.
domingo, *m.* Sunday.
Don (D.), Mr. (*used only with Christian names*).
dónde, where?
donde, where.
Doña (Da.), Mrs. *or* Miss (*used only with Christian names*).
dormir, to sleep; —**se,** to fall asleep.
dos, two.
drama, *m.* drama.
dramático, –a, dramatic.
droguería, *f.* drug store.
dudar, to doubt.
dueño, *m.* master.
dulce, sweet; —**s,** sweets, candy.
dulcemente, sweetly.
duodécimo, twelfth.
duque, *m.* duke.
durante, during
durar, to last.
duro, *m.* dollar.
duro, –a, hard.

E

e, and.
echar, to pour, pour out, throw.
edad, *f.* age.
edificio, *m.* building.
ejercicio, *m.* exercise.
el (la, lo, los, las), the, that, the one, those; — **que,** who, whom, he who, *etc.*
él, he, him, it.
elegir, to elect.
ella, she, her, it.
ello, it; — **es,** the fact is.
ellos, –as, they.
emoción, *f.* emotion.
empeñarse, to insist.
empezar, to begin.
emplear, to use, employ.
empleo, *m.* work, employment.
empresa, *f.* undertaking.
en, in, into, on.
encargar, to charge, order.
encender, to light.

encontrar, to meet, find.
encuentro; salir al —, to go to meet.
enemigo, *m.* enemy.
energía, *f.* energy, force.
enero, *m.* January.
enfadado, –a, angry.
enfadarse, to become angry *or* vexed.
enfermizo, –a, sickly.
enfermo, –a, sick.
engañar, to deceive; **—se,** to be mistaken, deceive oneself.
enjugar, to dry, wipe.
enojarse, to become vexed.
enseñar, to show, teach.
entender, to hear, understand.
enterarse, to learn, be informed.
entonces, then, at that time.
entrada, *f.* entrance.
entrar, to enter.
entre, between, among.
entregar, to deliver, hand over, give.
enviar, to send.
equipaje, *m.* baggage.
equivocarse, to be mistaken.
errar, to roam, wander, err.
escalera, *f.* stairs.
escoger, to choose, select.
esconder, to hide.
escribir, to write.
escuchar, to listen, listen to.
escuela, *f.* school.
ese (esa, esos, esas), that (those).
ése, *etc.*, that one, *etc.*; **eso,** that.
espacioso, –a, spacious, roomy.
España, *f.* Spain.
español, –ola, Spanish, the Spanish language.
Español, –ola, *m. and f.* Spaniard, Spanish woman.
espantar, to frighten.
esperar, to hope, wait for, expect.
esposo, –a, *m. and f.* husband, wife.
esquina, *f.*, corner.
estación, *f.* season, station.
estado, *m.* state.
Estados Unidos, *m. pl.* United States.
estar, to be.
este (esta, esto, estos, estas), this (these).
éste, *etc.*, this one, *etc.*, the latter.
estimar, to esteem.
estrechar, to tighten, clasp.
estrecho, –a, narrow, intimate.
estudiar, to study.
estudio, *m.* study.
estupefacto, –a, astounded, astonished.
Europa, *f.* Europe.
exigir, to demand, exact.
explicar, to explain.
extrañar, to astonish.
extranjero, –a, foreign; *no n.* stranger.
extraño, –a, strange.
extraordinario, –a, extraordinary.

F

fábrica, *f.* factory.
fácil, easy.
fácilmente, easily.
falta, *f.* lack, fault.
faltar, to lack.
familia, *f.* family.
fantasma, *f.* phantom.
favor, *m.* favor.
febrero, *m.* February.
fecha, *f.* date.
feliz, happy.
feo, –a, ugly.
Fernando, *m.* Ferdinand.
fiarse, to trust.
fijar, to fix; **—se en,** to notice.
fin, *m.* end; **a —es de,** the last of (the month); **a — de que,** in order that.
finca, *f.* property.
firmar, to sign.
flor, *f.* flower.
forastero, –a, foreigner, stranger.
fortuna, *f.* fortune.
frágil, fragile.
francamente, frankly.
francés, –esa, French; **a la —a,** in the French style.
Francés, –esa, *m. and f.* Frenchman, French woman.

Francia, *f.* France.
franco, *m.* franc.
fresco, –a, fresh, cool.
frío, –a, cold; **tener —,** to be cold (*of persons*); **hacer —,** to be cold (*of weather*).
frotar, to rub.
fruta, *f.* fruit.
fuego, *m.* fire.
fuera, out.
fuerte, strong.
fumar, to smoke.

G

gabán, *m.* overcoat.
gabinete, *m.* study.
ganar, to earn.
gas, *m.* gas.
gastar, to spend.
gemir, to groan.
general, *m.* general.
general, general.
generalmente, generally.
gente, *f.* people.
geografía, *f.* geography.
gorra, *f.* cap.
gozo, *m.* joy.
gracia, *f.* grace, attraction; **¿cuál es su —?** what is your name?
gracias, *f. pl.* thanks, I thank you.
grado, *m.* degree.
Gran Bretaña, *f.* Great Britain.
grande (gran), great, large, big, grand.
grito, *m.* cry, scream.
grueso, –a, thick, corpulent.
guante, *m.* glove.
guardar, to keep, protect.
guardia, *m.* policeman.
guardián, *m.* policeman.
guerra, *f.* war.
guía, *m. and f.* guide.
gustar, to like; **me gusta,** I like.
gusto, *m.* taste, pleasure; **a su —,** as you like, at will.

H

haber, to have.
habitación, room.
habitante, *m.* inhabitant.
hablador, –ora, talkative.
hablar, to speak, talk.
hacer, to make, do; **—se,** to become, grow.
hacia, toward.
hallar, to find.
hambre, *f.* hunger; **tener —,** to be hungry.
hasta, until; **— que,** until.
hay, there is, there are.
hecho, *p.p. of* **hacer.**
helar, to freeze.
herido, –a, wounded.
herir, to wound.
hermano, –a, *m. and f.* brother, sister.
hermoso, –a, beautiful, handsome.
hervir, to boil.
hierba, *f.* grass.
hierro, *m.* iron.
hijo, –a, *m. and f.* son, daughter; **hijos,** children.
historia, *f.* history, story.
holgazán, –ana, lazy.
hombre, *m.* man.
hombro, *m.* shoulder.
honor, *m.* honor.
honrado, –a, honorable, honest.
hora, *f.* hour.
hoy, to-day.
huésped, *m.* guest.
huevo, *m.* egg.
huir, to flee.
húmedo, –a, damp.

I

idioma, *m.* language.
iglesia, *f.* church.
igualar, to equal.
imaginar, to imagine.
imitación, *f.* imitation.
impedir, to prevent.
importancia, *f.* importance.
importante, important.
importar, to matter, be important.
imposible, impossible.
indicar, to show, point out.
influencia, *f.* influence.
Inglaterra, *f.* England.
inglés, –esa, English; **a la —a,** in the English style.

Inglés, –esa, *m. and f.* Englishman, English woman.
inmortal, immortal.
inocente, innocent.
instante, *m.* instant; **al —,** at once, instantly.
instituir, to establish, institute.
instructivo, –a, instructive.
inteligente, intelligent.
interés, interest.
interesante, interesting.
interesar, to interest.
invierno, *m.* winter.
invitar, to invite.
ir, to go; **— se,** to go away.
Italia, *f.* Italy.
izquierdo, –a, left; **a la —,** to the left; **de la —,** on the left.

J

jabón, *m.* soap.
jamás, ever, never.
jardín, *m.* garden.
jardinero, *m.* gardener.
joven, *m. and f.* young man, young woman.
joven, young.
Juan, *m.* John.
jueves, *m.* Thursday.
jugar, to play.
juicio, *m.* judgment.
julio, *m.* July.
junio, *m.* June.
junto, –a, together.
jurar, to swear.
justo, –a, just, right.

K

kilómetro, *m.* kilometer.

L

la, the, that, the one, she, her, it; *pl.* **las,** the, those.
labrador, *m.* peasant.
lado, *m.* side; **al —,** next door.
ladrón, *m.* thief.
lágrima, *f.* tear.
lámpara, *f.* lamp.
lápiz, *m.* pencil.
largo, –a, long.
lástima, *f.* pity.
lavar, to wash.
lección, *f.* lesson.
leche, *f.* milk.
leer, to read.
lejos, far.
lengua, *f.* language, tongue.
levantarse, to get up.
libra, *f.* pound.
libro, *m.* book.
ligero, –a, light, quick, slight.
limón, *m.* lemon, lemonade.
limosna, *f.* alms.
limpiar, to clean.
limpio, –a, clean.
lindo, –a, pretty.
lista, *f.* list; **— de platos,** bill of fare.
listo, –a, ready.
literatura, *f.* literature.
lo, the, it, him, so; **— que,** what, which; **— cual,** which.
Londres, London.
lucir, to shine. [**que,** as soon as.
luego, later, then; **— de,** after; **—**
lugar, *m.* place.
luna, *f.* moon; **hacer (haber) —,** to be moonlight.
lunes, *m.* Monday.
luto, *m.* mourning.

LL

llamar, to call, knock, ring; **—se,** to be named.
llave, *f.* key; **cerrar con —,** to lock.
llegar, to arrive.
llenar, to fill.
lleno, –a, full.
llevar, to carry, take, wear.
llorar, to weep.
llover, to rain.
lluvia, *f.* rain.

M

madera, *f.* wood.
madre, *f.* mother.
madrugar, to rise early.

maduro, –a, ripe.
maestro, –a, *m. and f.* teacher.
magnífico, –a, magnificent.
majadero, *m.* blockhead.
malgastar, to waste.
mal(o), –a, bad, ill.
mandar, to send, command, order.
manera, *f.* way, manner.
manifestar, to show.
mano, *f.* hand.
mantequilla, *f.* butter.
manzana, *f.* apple.
mañana, *f.* morning; **por la** —, in the morning; — **por la** —, to-morrow morning; **pasado** —, day after to-morrow.
mañana, to-morrow.
mapa, *m.* map.
marcar, to mark, show, indicate.
marchar, to walk.
marcharse, to go away, leave.
María, *f.* Mary.
marido, *m.* husband.
martes, *m.* Tuesday.
marzo, *m.* March.
mas, but.
más, more, most, plus; **no** — **que**, only; — **bien**, rather.
matar, to kill.
matrimonio, *m.* matrimony, marriage.
mayo, *m.* May.
mayor, greater, greatest, elder, eldest.
medicina, *f.* medicine.
médico, *m.* doctor.
medio, –a, half; — **día**, noon; *pl.* means.
Méjico, *m.* Mexico.
mejor, better, best.
menester, necessary.
menor, smaller, smallest, younger, youngest.
menos, less, least; **a** — **que**, unless.
mentir, to lie.
mentira, *f.* lie.
menudo, –a, fine.
menudo, **a** —, often.
merecer, to deserve.
mes, *m.* month.
mesa, *f.* table.
metal, *m.* metal.
meter, to put, place.
mi, my.
mí, me.
miedo, *m.* fear.
mientras, — **que**, while; — **más** . . . **más**, the more . . . the more.
miércoles, *m.* Wednesday.
mil, thousand.
milla, *f.* mile.
millón, *m.* million.
minuto, *m.* minute.
mío, –a, my, of mine.
mirar, to look at.
misa, *f.* mass.
mismo, –a, self, himself; same, very.
mitad, *f.* half.
moderno, –a, modern.
modestia, *f.* modesty.
modo, *m.* style, way, manner.
molestar, to disturb, trouble; —**se**, to disturb oneself.
molino, *m.* mill.
momento, *m.* moment; **al** —, at once.
montar, to mount, get upon *or* into.
morder, to bite.
moreno, –a, dark, brunette, brown.
morir, to die; —**se**, to be dying.
mostrar, to show.
motín, *m.* riot.
motivo, *m.* motive, reason.
mover, to move.
movimiento, *m.* movement.
mozo, *m.* boy, waiter.
muchacho, –a, *m. and f.* boy, girl.
mucho, –a, much, a great deal; *pl.* many; *adv.* much, a great deal, very.
muerte, *f.* death.
mujer, *f.* woman, wife.
mula, *f.* mule.
multitud, *f.* crowd.
mundo, *m.* world; **todo el** —, every one.
museo, *m.* museum.
música, *f.* music.
muy, very.

N

nada, nothing, by no means, not at all.
nadie, no one, nobody.
Napoleón, *m.* Napoleon.
naranja, *f.* orange.
necesitar, to need.
negar, to deny; —**se a**, to refuse.
negocio, *m.* business.
negro, –**a**, black.
nevar, to snow.
ni, neither, nor, not even; **ni . . . ni**, neither . . . nor.
nido, *m.* nest.
nieve, *f.* snow.
ningun (o), –**a**, nobody, no, no one.
niño, –**a**, *m. and f.* small boy *or* girl, child.
no, no, not; — **. . . más que**, only; — **. . . sino**, only; — **. . . ya**, no longer.
noche, *f.* night.
nombre, *m.* name.
nos, us.
nosotros, –**as**, we, us.
noticia, *f.* notice, news.
novela, *f.* novel.
noviembre, *m.* November.
nube, *f.* cloud.
nuestro, –**a**, our, of ours; **el (la, los, las) nuestro** (–**a**, –**os**, –**as**), ours.
Nueva York, New York.
nueve, nine.
nuevo, –**a**, new; **de** —, again.
número, *m.* number, size.
nunca, never, ever.

O

o, or.
objeto, *m.* object.
obligar, to oblige.
obra, *f.* work.
obtener, to obtain.
octubre, *m.* October.
ocultar, to hide.
ocupado, –**a**, busy, occupied.
ocupar, to occupy; —**se en**, to busy oneself.
ocho, eight.
odiar, to hate.
ofender, to offend.
oferta, *f.* offer.
oficio, *m.* employment, trade.
ofrecer, to offer.
oír, to hear.
ojo, *m.* eye.
oler, to smell.
olvidar, to forget.
once, eleven.
orden, *f.* order.
ordenar, to order.
oreja, *f.* ear.
oro, *m.* gold.
os, you.
otoño, *m.* autumn.
otro, –**a**, other, another.

P

Pablo, *m.* Paul.
padre, *m.* father; *pl.* parents.
pagar, to pay.
página, *f.* page.
país, *m.* country.
paja, *f.* straw.
pájaro, *m.* bird.
palabra, *f.* word.
palacio, *m.* palace.
pálido, –**a**, pale, pallid.
pan, *m.* bread.
papel, *m.* paper.
paquete, *m.* package.
para, for, in order to, to; — **que**, in order that.
parabién; **dar el** —, to congratulate, compliment.
paraguas, *m.* umbrella.
parecer, to seem, appear.
pariente, *m.* relative.
París, Paris.
parte, *f.* part, place; **en todas** —**s**, everywhere.
participar, to inform.
partir, to depart, leave.
pasado, –**a**, past, last; — **mañana**, day after to-morrow.
pasar, to pass, come in.
pasearse, to go walking.
paseo, *m.* walk.

pasión, *f.* passion.
paso, *m.* footstep; **de —,** in passing.
patria, *f.* country.
patriota, *m.* patriot.
pausa, *f.* pause.
paz, *f.* peace.
pedir, to ask.
Pedro, *m.* Peter.
peligro, *m.* danger.
pelo, *m.* hair.
pena, *f.* pain, sorrow; **dar —,** to be pitiful.
pensar, to think, intend; **— en,** to think of.
peor, worse, worst.
pequeño, –a, little.
pera, *f.* pear.
perder, to lose, miss.
perdón, *m.* pardon.
perdonar, to pardon.
perecer, to perish.
perezoso, –a, lazy.
periódico, *m.* newspaper.
permitir, to permit.
pero, but.
perseguir, to pursue.
persona, *f.* person.
pertenecer, to belong to.
perro, *m.* dog.
pesado, –a, heavy, (*of weather*) close.
pesar; a — de, in spite of.
pescado, *m.* fish.
peseta, *f.* pesata (*Spanish coin worth $.20*).
peso, *m.* dollar.
pez, *m.* fish.
piano, *m.* piano.
pie, *m.* foot; **a —,** on foot.
piedra, *f.* stone.
pierna, *f.* leg.
pieza, *f.* room, piece.
pipa, *f.* pipe.
piso, *m.* story, floor.
plata, *f.* silver.
pluma, *f.* pen, feather.
pobre, poor.
poco, –a, little; *pl.* few; **un —,** a little; *adv.* little.
poder, to be able, can, may.
policía, *f.* police; *m.* policeman.
poner, to put, place, set; **—se,** to put on (clothing), become; **—se a,** to begin.
por, for, through, by, in; **— aquí, — ahí, — allí,** around here, there, this way, that way; **— . . . que,** however; **— la mañana,** in the morning.
porqué, why?
porque, because.
portero, *m.* porter.
posible, possible.
pozo, *m.* well.
postal, postal.
postrero, –a, last.
prado, *m.* meadow.
precio, *m.* price.
precioso, –a, precious.
preciso, necessary.
preferir, to prefer.
preguntar, to ask (a question).
prender, to catch, seize.
prepararse, to prepare.
presentar, to present, introduce.
presidente, *m.* president.
prestar, to lend; **tener prestado,** to have borrowed.
primavera, *f.* spring.
primer(o), –a, first.
primo, –a, *m. and f.* cousin.
príncipe, *m.* prince.
principiar, to begin.
prisa, *f.* haste; **tener —,** to be in a hurry.
probable, probable.
probablemente, probably.
probar, to try, taste.
producir, to produce.
profesor, *m.* professor.
profundidad, *f.* depth.
prohibir, to forbid.
prometer, to promise.
pronto, soon, quickly; **de —,** suddenly.
propio, –a, own.
proponer, to propose.
proposición, *f.* proposition.
proseguir, to proceed, pursue.
protestante, Protestant.
próximo, –a, next; **el — pasado,** the month just past.

prudente, prudent, cautious.
públicar, to publish.
público, *m.* public.
pueblo, *m.* town, village, people.
puerta, *f.* door.
pues, then, therefore, well, why, since.
punto, *m.* point; **en —,** exactly; **a — fijo,** exactly.
puro, –a, pure.

Q

que, el (la, los, las), who, which, that; **lo —,** what, a thing which.
qué, *interrog. and exclam.* what? what a!
que, *conj.* that, for, than, as.
que, *rel. pron.* who, whom, which, that.
quedar, to remain; **—se,** to remain, stay.
quejarse, to complain.
quemar, to burn.
querer, to wish, want, love, like; **— decir,** to mean.
querido, –a, dear, beloved.
quien, who, whom, he who, him who.
quién, who? whom?
quieto, –a, quiet.
quince, fifteen; **— días,** two weeks.
quinientos, –as, five hundred.
quitar, to take off, take from.

R

rápido, *m.* express train.
raro, –a, strange, unusual.
rato, *m.* short time, while.
razón, *f.* reason; **tener —,** to be right.
realmente, truly, really.
recibir, to receive.
recién, recently, new.
recoger, to pick, pick up.
reconocer, to recognize.
recordar, to remember.
redondo, –a, round.
referir, to relate.
regalo, *m.* gift, present.
registrar, to examine.
reina, *f.* queen.
reír, to laugh; **—se,** to laugh at.
relampaguear, to lighten.
reloj, *m.* watch, clock.
rendir, to subdue, vanquish, wear [out.
reñir, to scold, quarrel.
repetir, to repeat.
resfriado, *m.* cold.
responder, to reply.
respuesta, *f.* reply, answer.
rey, *m.* king.
rezar, to pray.
rico, –a, rich.
rincón, *m.* corner.
río, *m.* river.
riquísimo, –a, very rich.
roble, *m.* oak.
rogar, to ask, implore.
romper, to break.
ropa, *f.* clothing.
rosa, *f.* rose.
rostro, *m.* face.
rubio, –a, light, blond.
rueda, *f.* wheel.
ruido, *m.* noise.
rumor, *m.* sound, report.

S

S.S.S., Su Seguro Servidor, Very truly yours.
sábado, *m.* Saturday.
saber, to know, have knowledge of, know how, be able.
sacar, to take out.
saco, *m.* sack, bag.
sala, *f.* parlor.
salir, to go out *or* come out, start.
salón, *m.* parlor, drawing room.
salud, *f.* health; **bien de —,** in good health.
saludar, to salute, greet, speak to.
saludo, *m.* greeting, bow.
sano, –a, healthful.
sastre, *m.* tailor.
satisfacer, to satisfy.
se, himself, herself, itself, oneself, yourself, themselves, yourselves; (**=le, les**), to him, to her, to it, to them, to you.

seco, –a, dry.
secreto, *m.* secret.
sed, *f.* thirst; **tener —,** to be thirsty.
seda, *f.* silk.
seguida; en —, at once.
seguir, to follow, continue.
según, according to.
segundo, –a, second.
seguro, –a, safe, secure.
seis, six.
semana, *f.* week; **la — que viene,** next week.
sentar, to set, seat; **—se,** to sit down, be seated.
sentir, to feel, regret.
señas, *f.* address.
señor, *m.* sir, gentleman, Mr.
señora, *f.* madam, lady, wife, Mrs.
señorita, *f.* young lady, Miss.
separar, to separate.
se(p)tiembre, *m.* September.
sé(p)timo, –a, seventh.
ser, to be; **a no — que,** unless.
servicio, *m.* service.
servir, to serve; **sírvase V.,** please, be kind enough to.
sesenta, sixty.
setenta, seventy.
severamente, severely.
severo, –a, severe.
si, if, whether.
sí, yes.
sí, himself, herself, itself, yourself, oneself, themselves, yourselves.
siempre, always, ever; **— que,** whenever.
siete, seven.
siglo, *m.* century.
siguiente, following.
silla, *f.* chair.
sillón, *m.* armchair.
simpático, –a, attractive, congenial.
sin, without; **— que,** without.
sino, but; **no . . . sino,** only.
sitio, *m.* place.
situación, *f.* position, situation.
sobrar, to have left over.
sobre, on, upon.
sobrino, *m.* nephew; **—a,** *f.* niece.
sofá, *m.* sofa.
sol, *m.* sun; **hacer —,** to be sunny.
solamente, only.
soldado, *m.* soldier.
solicitar, to ask for.
solo, –a, alone, solitary, single.
sólo, *adv.* only.
sombra, *f.* shade.
sombrero, *m.* hat.
soñar, dream.
sopa, *f.* soup.
sordo, –a, deaf.
sorprender, to surprise.
sostener, to sustain, maintain, bear.
su, his, her, its, their, your, one's.
subir, to go *or* take up, mount, get in, raise.
sucedir, to happen; **lo sucedido,** what has happened.
sucio, –a, dirty.
suelo, *m.* floor, ground.
sueño, *m.* sleep, **tener —,** to be sleepy.
sufrir, to suffer.
sumamente, extremely.
superar, to surpass, excel.
suplicar, to beg, implore.
surtido, *m.* stock, assortment.
suyo, –a, your, yours, of yours; **el (la, lo, los, las) suyo (–a, –o, –os, –as),** yours.

T

tabaco, *m.* tobacco.
tal, such, such a; **un —,** a certain; **— vez,** perhaps; **con — que,** provided that.
también, also, too.
tampoco, either, neither.
tan, so, as; **— . . . como,** as . . . as.
tanto, *adv.* so much, as much.
tanto, –a, so much, as much; *pl.* so many, as many; **— . . . como,** as (so) much . . . as; **por lo —,** consequently.
tardar, to delay; **no tardará en llegar,** he will not be long in arriving; **¿cuánto tardará en . . .?** how long will it take for?

tarde, *f.* afternoon, evening; **por la —,** in the afternoon *or* evening.
tarde, *adv.* late.
tarjeta, *f.* card; — **postal,** postcard.
taza, *f.* cup.
te, *m.* tea.
teatro, *m.* theatre.
telefonear, to telephone.
telegrama, *m.* telegram.
temblar, to tremble, shiver.
temer, to fear.
temperatura, *f.* temperature.
tempestad, *f.* storm.
temprano, early.
tener, to have, hold; possess, consider; — **que,** to be obliged to, have to; **¿qué tiene V.?** what is the matter?
tercer(o), -a, third.
terminar, to finish.
terreno, *m.* land, soil.
terrible, terrible.
texto, *m.* text; **libro de —,** textbook.
ti, thee, you.
tiempo, *m.* time, weather; **a —,** in time.
tienda, *f.* shop, store.
tierra, *f.* earth, land.
tinta, *f.* ink.
tío, -a, *m. and f.* uncle, aunt.
tirar, to throw, draw, pull.
toalla, *f.* towel.
tocar, touch, play (*of musical instruments*).
todavía, yet, still.
todo, -a, all, every; *n.* all, everything; — **el día,** all day; **todas las noches,** every night.
tomar, to take.
tomo, *m.* volume.
tono, *m.* tone, taste, style.
torre, *f.* tower.
trabajador, industrious.
trabajar, to work.
trabajo, *m.* work.
traducir, to translate.
traer, to bring, wear.
traje, *m.* suit, costume.
tranquilo, -a, quiet.
tranvía, *m.* tramway, street car.
trasladar, to move, transfer.
tratar, to treat, try.
trece, thirteen.
treinta, thirty.
tren, *m.* train.
tres, three.
trigo, *m.* wheat.
triste, sad.
tronar, to thunder.
tú, you, thou.
tu, your, thy.
tuyo, -a, thy, of thine, yours, of yours; **el (la,** *etc.*), **tuyo, -a,** *etc.*, thine, yours.

U

u, or.
último, -a, last.
un(o), -a, one, a, an; **unos, -as,** a few, some.
usar, to use.
usted, you.
útil, useful.

V

V. (**usted**), you; **VV.** *pl.* (**ustedes**) you.
vaca, *f.* cow.
vacante, empty, open, vacant.
vacilar, to hesitate.
valer, to be worth; **no — nada,** to be worthless, no good; — **más,** to be better.
valiente, brave.
vario, -a, various, different; *pl.* several.
vaso, *m.* glass.
Vd. (**usted**), you; **Vds.** *pl.* (**ustedes**), you.
vecino, -a, *m. and f.* neighbor.
veinte, twenty.
vencer, to conquer.
vender, to sell, betray.
venir, to come.
ventaja, *f.* advantage.
ventana, *f.* window.
ver, to see.
verano, *m.* summer.

verdad, *f.* truth; **¿no es —?** is it not so?
verdaderamente, truly, truthfully.
verdadero, –a, true, real.
verde, green.
vergüenza, *f.* shame; **tener —,** to be ashamed.
verter, to spill, pour, pour out.
vestido, *m.* dress, clothing.
vestir, to clothe; **—se,** to dress (oneself).
vez, *f.* time; **otra —,** again; **tal —,** perhaps; **muchas veces,** often.
viajar, to travel.
viajero, *m.* traveler, passenger.
vida, *f.* life.
viejo, –a, old.
viento, *m.* wind; **hacer —,** to be [windy.
viernes, *m.* Friday.
vino, *m.* wine.
visitar, to visit.
vivir, to live.
volar, to fly.
voluntad, *f.* wish, desire.
volver, to turn, return, come back; **— a,** again.
vos, you.
vosotros, –as, you.
voz, *f.* voice.
vuelta, *f.* turn, return; **a — de correo,** by return mail.
vuelto, –a, *p.p. of* **volver.**
vuestro, –a, your, of yours; **el (la,** *etc.*) **vuestro** (**–a,** *etc.*), yours.

W

wagón, *m.* coach (of a train).

Y

y, and.
ya, already, now; **— no,** no longer no more.
yarda, *f.* yard.
yo, I.

Z

zapato, *m.* shoe.

ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY

A

a, an, un, una.
abandon, abandonar.
able, be —, poder.
abominable, abominable.
about, de, acerca de, poco más o menos.
above, arriba.
absence, ausencia, *f.*
accept, aceptar.
accompany, acompañar.
account, cuenta, *f.*
ache, doler.
acquaintance, conocido, –a.
actor, actor, *m.*
address, señas, *f. pl.*
admittance, entrada, *f.*
advantage, ventaja, *f.*
adversary, contrario, *m.*
advice, consejo, *m.*
affair, asunto, *m.*
after, *prep.* después de; *conj.* después que.
afternoon, tarde, *f.*; **in the —,** por la tarda; **Good —,** ¡Buenas tardes!
afterward, después.
again, otra vez, de nuevo, volver a.
age, edad, *f.*
ago, a year (two days) **—,** hace un año (dos días).
agreeable, agradable.
agriculture, agricultura, *f.*
aid, ayudar.
all, todo, –a; **— the, — that,** cuanto.
allow, permitir, dejar.
almanac, almanaque, *m.*
almost, casi, poco más o menos.
alms, limosna, *f.*
alone, solo, –a.
Alphonso, Alfonso.
already, ya.
also, también.
although, aunque.
always, siempre.
America, América.
American, americano, –a.
among, entre.
amuse, divertir.
and, y, e (*before* i– *or* –hi).
angry, enfadado, –a; **grow —,** enfadarse.
announce, anunciar.
another, otro, –a; **one —,** los unos (a) los otros.
answer, responder, contestar.
Anthony, Antonio.
any, alguno, –a.
anything, algo, cualquier cosa.
appear, parecer.
applaud, aplaudir.
apple, manzana, *f.*
approach, acercarse (a).
April, abril, *m.*
ardent, ardiente.
arise, levantarse.
arm, brazo, *m.*
armchair, sillón, *m.*
armed, armado, –a.
arrive (at, in), llegar (a).
article, artículo, *m.*
as, como, que, tan; **as . . . as,** tán . . . como, tanto . . . como *or* cuanto; **as much —,** cuanto; **as soon —,** en cuanto.
ascertain, averiguar.
ask (*a question*), preguntar; (*request*), pedir, rogar; **— for,** pedir, solicitar.
asleep, fall —, dormirse.
astonish, extrañar.
astonished, estupefacto, –a.
at, a, en.
attentive, atento, –a.
attentively, atentamente.
attractive, simpático, –a.

August, agosto, *m.*
aunt, tía, *f.*
author, autor, *m.*
autumn, otoño, *m.*
awake, despertarse.

B

back, *adv.* atrás; **turn one's —,** volver la espalda.
backward, atrás.
bad, malo, –a; **very —,** malísimo, –a.
bag, saco, *m.*
baggage, equipaje, *m.*
bank, banco, *m.*
base, bajo, –a.
bathe, bañar.
be, ser, estar.
beard, barba, *f.*
beautiful, hermoso, –a, bello, –a.
because, porque; **— of,** a causa de.
become, hacerse, ponerse.
bed, cama, *f.*; **go to —,** acostarse.
bedroom, alcoba, *f.*
before (*position*), ante, delante de; (*time*) antes de; (**formerly**) antes; *conj.* antes que.
beg, rogar, suplicar.
begin, empezar, principiar, comenzar.
behind, *prep.* detrás de; **fall —,** atrasarse.
believe, creer.
belong, pertenecer.
beside, a lado de; **be — oneself,** no caber en sí.
best, mejor.
better, mejor.
between, entre.
bicycle, bicileta, *f.*
big, grande.
bill (**account**), cuenta, *f.*; **— of fare,** lista de platos.
bird, pájaro, *m.*; ave, *f.*
bite, morder.
black, negro, –a.
blame, culpa, *f.*
blind, ciego, –a.
blond, rubio, –a.
blue, azul.
body, cuerpo, *m.*
boil, hervir, bullir.
book, libro, *m.*
Bordeaux, Bordeaux.
born, be —, nacer.
bottle, botella, *f.*
bow, saludo, *m.*
box, caja, *f.*
boy, muchacho, *m.*; **little —,** niño, *m.*
brave, valiente.
Brazil, Brasil, *m.*
bread, pan, *m.*
break, romper.
breakfast, desayuno, *m.*; **eat —,** desayunarse; — **time,** hora de desayunarse *or* almorzar.
bring, traer.
broad, ancho, –a.
brother, hermano, *m.*
brown, moreno, –a.
brunette, moreno, –a.
build, construir.
building, edificio, *m.*
bullfight, corrida de toros, *f.*
burn, quemar.
business, negocio, *m.*
busy, ocupado, –a; — **oneself,** ocuparse.
but, pero, sino (*after negative*).
butter, mantequilla, *f.*
buy, comprar.
by, por.

C

café, café, *m.*
calendar, calendario, *m.*
call, llamar.
can, poder.
Canadá, Canadá, *m.*
cane, bastón, *m.*
cap, gorra, *f.*
capital, capital, *f.*
card, tarjeta, *f.*
care, cuidado, *m.*
carriage, coche, *m.*; **railway —,** wagón, *m.*
carry, llevar.
catch, coger.
Catholic, católico, –a.
cause, causa, *f.*
cautious, prudente.

cease, cesar.
celebrated, célebre.
centigrade, centígrado.
century, siglo, *m.*
certain, cierto, –a; **a —,** un tal.
chair, silla, *f.*
change, cambiar.
charity, caridad, *f.*
Charles, Carlos.
cheap, barato, –a.
cheerful, alegre.
child, niño, –a, *m. and f.*; **children,** niños, *m. pl.* **sons and daughters,** hijos, *m. pl.*
China, China, *f.*
chocolate, chocolate, *m.*
choose, escoger.
church, iglesia, *f.*
cigar, cigarro, *m.*
citizen, ciudadano, *m.*
city, ciudad, *f.*
clasp, estrechar.
class, clase, *f.*
clean, limpiar; *adj.* limpio, –a.
clear, claro, –a.
clock, reloj, *m.*
close, cerrar.
clothe, vestir.
clothes, vestidos, *m.*
clothing, ropa. *f.*
cloud, nube, *f.* [gón.
coach, coche, *m.*, (*of a train*) wa-
coffee, café, *m.*
cold, *noun*, frío, *m.*; **be —** (*of persons*) tener frío; (*of weather*) hacer frío; **a —,** un resfriado.
cold, *adj.* frío, –a.
collar, cuello, *m.*
college, colegio, *m.*
come, venir; **— in,** entrar, pasar; **— out,** salir; **— back,** volver; **— to,** llegar a; **— up,** montar.
comfortable, cómodo, –a.
command, mandar.
commence, comenzar.
company, compañia, *f.*
complain, quejarse.
compliment, dar el parabién.
conceive, concebir.
concerning, de, sobre, acerca de.
conduct, conducta, *f.*; *vb.* conducir.
confidence, confianza, *f.*
congratulate, dar el parabién.
conquer, vencer.
consent, consentir.
consequently, por lo tanto.
consider, tener por.
construct, construir.
contained, be — in, caber.
content, contento, –a.
contented, be —, contentarse.
continue, continuar, seguir.
convenient, cómodo, –a.
conversation, conversación, *f.*
cook, cocinero, –a, *m. and f.*
cool, fresco, –a; **be —** (*of weather*), hacer fresco.
Cordova, Córdoba, *f.*
corner, esquina, *f.*; rincón. *m.*
correct, corregir.
cost, costar.
costume, traje, *m.*
cotton, algodón, *m.*
count, contar.
countenance, rostro, *m.*
country, país, *m.*; (*native land*) patria, *f.*; (*not city*) campo, *m.*
course (*of study*), carrera, *f.*
cousin, primo, –a, *m. and f.*
cow, vaca, *f.*
coward, cobarde, *m.*
create, crear.
crippled, cojo, –a.
critical, crítico, –a.
cross, atravesar.
crowd, multitud, *f.*
cultivate, cultivar.
cup, taza, *f.*
curiosity, curiosidad, *f.*
current, corriente.
cut, cortar.

D

daughter, hija, *f.*
day, día, *m.*; **Good —,** ¡Buenos días! **— after to-morrow,** pasado mañana; **— before yesterday,** antes de ayer.
deal, a great —, mucho, –a.
dear (*beloved*), querido, –a, caro, –a; (*expensive*) caro, –a.

deceive, engañar.
demand, exigir.
deny, negar.
die, morir.
difficult, difícil.
dine, comer.
dining room, comedor.
dinner, comida, *f.*; — **time,** hora de comer.
dirty, sucio, –a.
disagreeable, desagradable.
distant, lejano, –a.
distinctly, distintamente.
distinguish, distinguir.
disturb, molestarse.
divide, dividir.
do, hacer; **done,** hecho, –a.
doctor, médico, *m.*
dog, perro, *m.*
dollar, duro, *m.*, peso, *m.*
door, puerta, *f.*
doubt, duda, *f.*
down, abajo.
dozen, docena, *f.*
dress, vestirse.
dress, vestido, *m.*
drink, beber.
drop, dejarse caer.

E

each, cada; — **other,** el uno (al) otro; — **one,** cada cual, cada uno.
eagle, águila, *f.*
ear, oreja, *f.*; (*hearing*), oído, *m.*
early, temprano.
earn, ganar.
earth, tierra, *f.*
easily, fácilmente.
easy, fácil.
eat, comer.
egg, huevo, *m.*
eight, ocho.
either, o; **not . . . —,** tampoco; — **. . . or** (*after neg.*), ni . . . ni.
elder, mayor.
eldest, el mayor.
elect, elegir.
emotion, emoción, *f.*
employ, emplear.
employment, empleo, *m.*
empty, vacante.
end, terminar; *noun*, fin, *m.*; **at the — of** (*a month*), a fines de.
enemy, enemigo, *m.*
energy, energía, *f.*
England, Inglaterra, *f.*
English, inglés, –a.
Englishman, woman, Inglés, –a.
enough, bastante.
enter, entrar.
entrance, entrada, *f.*
equal, igualar.
erect, construir.
establish, instituir.
esteem, estimar.
esteemed, apreciable.
Europe, Europa, *f.*
even, aun.
evening, tarde, *f.*; **Good —,** Buenas noches, **in the —,** por la tarde.
ever (always), siempre; (*in a question*) jamás.
every, todo, –a, cada; — **day,** todos los días, cada día.
everyone, todo el mundo.
everything, todo.
everywhere, en todas partes.
exact, exigir.
exactly, en punto, a punto fijo, precisamente.
examine, registrar.
excel, superar.
excuse, dispensar.
exercise, ejercicio, *m.*
expect, esperar.
expensive, costoso, –a, caro, –a.
explain, explicar.
extraordinary, extraordinario, –a.
extremely, sumamente.
eye, ojo, *m.*

F

face, cara, *f.*
factory, fábrica, *f.*
fail, faltar, dejar de.
fall, caer; — **down,** caerse.
family, familia, *f.*
famous, famoso, –a.
far, lejos; **as — as,** hasta.

farm, hacienda, *f.*
farther, más allá.
fast, de prisa; **to be —** (*of a clock*), adelantarse.
father, padre, *m.*
fault, culpa, *f.*; defecto, *m.*; falta, *f.*
favor, favor, *m.*; **do me the —,** hágame el favor de. [de, temer.
fear, miedo, *m.*; **to —,** tener miedo
February, febrero, *m.*
feel, sentir.
Ferdinand, Fernando, *m.*
few, pocos, –as, unos, –as.
field, campo, *m.*
fifteen, quince.
find, hallar, encontrar, dar con.
fine, hermoso, –a; (*small*) menudo, –a.
finger, dedo, *m.*
finish, concluir, acabar, terminar.
fire, fuego, *m.*
first, primer(o), –a.
fish, pescado, *m.*; pez, *m.*
fitted, — for, apto, –a.
five, cinco; **— hundred,** quinientos.
fix, fijar.
flee, huir.
floor, suelo, *m.*; (*story*) piso, *m.*
flower, flor, *f.*
follow, seguir; **—ing,** siguiente.
fond, be — of, gustar.
foot, pie, *m.*; **on —,** a pie.
footstep, paso, *m.*
for, por, para.
forbid, prohibir.
force, energía, *f.*
foreign, extranjero, –a.
foreigner, forastero, –a *m. and f.*
forget, olvidar.
former, aquél, –la.
formerly, antes, antiguamente.
forty, cuarenta.
four, cuatro.
fourteen, catorce.
fourth, cuarto.
fowl, ave, *f.*
fragile, frágil.
France, Francia, *f.*
frankly, francamente.
freeze, helar.
French, francés, –esa; **— woman,** Francesa.
Frenchman, Francés, *m.*
fresh, fresco, –a.
Friday, viernes, *m.*
friend, amigo, –a, *m. and f.*
frighten, espantar.
from, de, desde.
front, in —, delante.
fruit, fruta, *f.*
full, lleno, –a.

G

Gabriel, Gabriel, *m.*
garden, jardín, *m.*
gardener, jardinero, *m.*
gas, gas, *m.*
general, *noun,* general, *m.*; *adj.* general.
generally, generalmente.
gentleman, señor, *m.*; caballero, *m.*
geography, geografía, *f.*
German, alemán, –ana; *noun,* Alemán, –ana.
Germany, Alemania, *f.*
get (*go after*), ir a buscar; (*become*) ponerse; **— up,** levantarse; **— upon** *or* **into,** montar.
gift, regalo, *m.*
girl, muchacha, *f.*; **little —,** niña *f.*
give, dar.
glad, alegre, contento, –a; **be —,** alegrarse; **be — to,** tener gusto en.
glass, vaso, *m.*
glove, guante, *m.*
go, ir; **— out,** salir; **— down,** bajar; **— away,** marcharse; **— in,** entrar; **— to bed,** acostarse; (*of a watch*) andar; **— up,** subir; **— on,** seguir.
God, Dios, *m.*
gold, oro, *m.*
good, buen(o), –a.
good-bye, adios, Vaya V. con Dios.
goodness, bondad, *f.*
grace, gracia, *f.*
graceful, gracioso, –a.
Granada, Granada.
grant, ceder.

grass, hierba, *f.*
grateful, be — for, agradecer.
great, gran (de); **a — deal,** mucho.
Great Britain, gran Bretaña, *f.*
green, verde.
greeting, saludo, *m.*
groan, gemir.
ground, suelo, *m.*
grow (*become*), hacerse.
guard, guardar.
guest, huésped, *m.*
guide, guía, *m. and f.*
guilty, culpable.

H

hair, cabello, *m.*; pelo, *m.*
half, mitad, *f.*; *adj.* medio, –a.
hand, mano, *f.*
handsome, hermoso, –a.
happen, acontecer, suceder, acertar.
happy, feliz, alegre, contento, –a; **be —,** alegrarse.
hard, duro, –a.
harm, daño, *m.* [prisa.
haste, prisa, *f.*; **be in —,** tener
hasten, apresurarse.
hat, sombrero, *m.*
hate, odiar, aborrecer.
have, *aux. vb.* haber; (*possess, hold*) tener; **— to,** tener que.
he, él; **— who,** el que, quien.
head, cabeza, *f.*; **headache,** dolor de cabeza.
health, salud, *f.*
healthful, sano, –a.
hear, oír, entender.
heart, corazón, *m.*
heat, calor, *m.*
heavy, pesado, –a.
help, ayudar.
her, *pron.* la; *poss. adj.* su, de ella, el suyo.
here, aquí, acá.
herself, se, sí, misma, ella misma.
hesitate, vacilar.
hide, esconder, ocultar.
high, alto, –a.
him, él, le, lo; **with —,** consigo; **himself,** se, sí, mismo, él mismo.
his, su, sus, el (la, lo, los, las) suyo, –a, –o, –os, –as; el (la, lo, los, las) . . . de él.
history, historia, *f.*
hold, take — of, coger; (*contain*) caber.
home (*to one's —*), a casa; **at —,** en casa.
honest, honrado, –a.
honor, honor, *m.*
honored, honrado, –a.
hope, esperar.
horse, caballo, *m.*; **on horseback,** a caballo.
hot, caliente, cálido, –a.
hour, hora, *f.*
house, casa, *f.*
how, cómo; **— much** (*many*), cuánto, –a (–os, –as); **— long,** cuánto tiempo hace que, desde cuánto.
however, por . . . que.
hundred, one —, cien(to).
hunger, hambre, *f.*
hungry, be —, tener hambre.
hunt, caza, *f.*
hunt, cazar; (*seek*) buscar. [prisa.
hurry, darse prisa; **be in a —,** tener
hurt, doler.
husband, marido, *m.*; esposo, *m.*

I

if, si.
ill, enfermo, –a, malo, –a.
imagine, imaginar.
imitation, imitación, *f.*
immortal, inmortal.
implore, suplicar, rogar.
importance, importancia, *f.*
important, importante.
impossible, imposible.
in, en, por, dentro, dentro de; (*after a comparative*) de.
incivility, descortesía.
influence, influencia, *f.*
inform, participar.
inhabitant, habitante, *m.*
ink, tinta, *f.*
innocent, inocente.
inquire, preguntar; **— of the porter,** dirigirse al portero.

insist, empeñarse.
instant, instante, *m.*
instructive, instructivo, –a.
intelligent, inteligente.
intend, pensar.
interest, interesar; *n.* interés, *m.*
interesting, interesante.
intimate, estrecho, –a.
into, en.
introduce, presentar.
invite, convidar.
iron, hierro, *m.*
it, él, ella, ello, lo; **itself,** se, sí.
Italy, Italia, *f.*

J

jail, cárcel, *f.*
January, enero, *m.*
jealous, celoso, –a.
jealousy, celos, *m.*
John, Juan, *m.*
joy, alegría, *f.*; gozo, *m.*
judgment, juicio, *m.*
July, julio, *m.*
June, junio, *m.*
just, justo, –a; **have —,** acabar de.

K

keep, guardar.
key, llave, *f.*
kill, matar.
kilometer, kilómetro, *m.*
kind (**variety**), clase, *f.*
kindness, bondad, *f.*
king, rey, *m.*
kitchen, cocina, *f.*
knife, cuchillo, *m.*; (*penknife*) cortaplumas, *m.*
knock, llamar.
know (*be acquainted with*), conocer, (*be aware of*) saber.

L

lady, señora, *f.*; **young —,** señorita, *f.*
lame, cojo, –a.
lamp, lámpara, *f.*
land, tierra, *f.*; terreno, *m.*
language, lengua, *f.*; idioma, *m.*
large, gran(de).
last, último, postrero; (*just past*) pasado, –a; — **night,** anoche.
last, durar.
late, tarde.
latter, éste.
laugh, reír; — **at,** reírse de.
lawyer, abogado, *m.*
lazy, perezoso, –a.
lead, conducir.
learn, — **to,** aprender a.
least, menos.
leave, dejar; (*depart*) marcharse, partir; (*go out*) salir; **take —,** despedirse.
left, izquierdo, –a; **to the —,** a la izquierda; **on the —,** de la izquierda.
left, to have —, sobrar, quedar; **I have —,** me queda(n).
leg, pierna, *f.*
lend, prestar.
less, menos.
lesson, lección, *f.*
let, dejar; permitir.
letter, carta, *f.*
library, biblioteca, *f.*
lie, mentir; mentira, *f.*
lie, — down, acostarse.
life, vida, *f.*
light (*quick, or of weight*), ligero, –a.
light (*blond*), rubio, –a.
light, encender.
lighten, relampaguear.
like, quérer (a), desear; **I —,** me gusta.
listen, escuchar.
literature, literatura, *f.*
little, poco, –a; (*small*) pequeño, –a; *adv.* poco.
live, vivir.
Liverpool, Liverpool.
lock, cerrar con llave.
London, Londres.
long, largo, –a; **how —,** cuánto tiempo hace que, desde cuánto.
longer, no —, (*time*) ya no.
look, (*at*) mirar, (*for*) buscar.
lose, perder.
loud, alto, –a.
love, amar, querer a.
low, bajo, –a.
lunch, almuerzo, *m.*; **take —,** almorzar.

M

madame, señora, *f.*
magnificent, magnífico, –a.
mahogany, caoba, *f.*
mail, correo, *m.*
make, hacer.
man, hombre, *m.*
manner, manera, *f.*
many, muchos, –as.
map, mapa, *m.*
march, marchar.
mark, marcar.
marry, casarse.
Mary, María, *f.*
mass, misa, *f.*
master, dueño, *m.*
matrimony, matrimonio, *m.*
matter, asunto, *m.*; **what is the —,** ¿qué hay? ¿qué tiene?
matter, importar.
May, mayo, *m.*
me, mí, me; **with —,** conmigo.
meadow, prado, *m.*
meal, comida, *f.*
mean, querer decir, significar.
means, medios, *m.*
meat, carne, *f.*
medicine, medicina, *f.*
meet, encontrar, dar con; **go to —,** salir al encuentro.
mention, don't — it, no hay de qué.
merchant, comerciante, *m.*
metal, metal, *m.*
Mexico, Méjico, *m.*
mile, milla, *f.*
milk, leche, *f.*
mill, molino, *m.*
million, millón, *m.*
mine, mío, –a; el (la, lo, los, las) mío, –a, –o, –os, –as.
minute, minuto, *m.*
Miss, señorita, *f.*
mistaken, be —, engañarse, equivocarse.
modern, moderno, –a.
modesty, modestía, *f.*
moment, momento, *m.*
Monday, lunes, *m.*
money, dinero, *m.*
month, mes, *m.*
moon, luna, *f.*
more, más; **the — . . . the —,** cuanto más . . . (tanto) más, mientras más . . . más, tanto más . . . más.
morning, mañana, *f.*; **in the —,** por la mañana; **to-morrow —,** mañana por la mañana; **Good —,** ¡Buenos días!
most, más.
mother, madre, *f.*
motive, motivo, *m.*
mount, montar.
mourning, luto, *m.*
mouth, boca.
movement, movimiento, *m.*
Mr., (el) señor, *m.*; (*before first names*) don, D.
Mrs., (la) señora, *f.*; (*before first names*) doña, Da.
much, mucho, –a; **very —,** muchísimo, –a; **so (as) — as,** tanto, –a, como; **too —,** demasiado, –a.
mule, mula, *f.*
museum, museo, *m.*
music, música, *f.*
must, tener que.
my, mi, mis, mío (–a, –os, –as).
myself, yo mismo, me.

N

name, nombre, *m.*; **my — is,** me llamo.
Napoleon, Napoleón, *m.*
narrow, estrecho, –a.
near, cerca de.
necessary, preciso, necesario, –a; **be —,** ser preciso, ser necesario.
neck, cuello, *m.*
need, necesitar.
neighbor, vecino, –a, *m. and f.*
neither, ni, tampoco; **— . . . nor,** no . . . ni, ni . . . ni.
nephew, sobrino, *m.*
never, nunca, jamás.
new, nuevo, –a; **— world,** Nuevo Mundo, *m.*
New York, Nueva York.
news, noticia, *f.* noticias, *f. pl.*
newspaper, periódico, *m.*
nest, nido, *m.*

next, próximo, –a; — **year,** el año que viene.
niece, sobrina, *f.*
night, noche, *f.*; **last** —, anoche; **Good** —, ¡Buenas noches! **to-** —, esta noche.
nine, nueve.
no, no.
no, none, ningun(o), –a; — **one,** nadie.
nobody, nadie.
noise, ruido, *m.*
noon, medio día.
nor, ni.
not, no; — . . . **either,** ni . . . tampoco; — **even,** ni.
nothing, nada.
notice, fijarse en; *n.* noticia, *f.*
novel, novela, *f.*
November, novembre, *m.*
now, ahora, ya.
number, número, *m.*

O

oak, roble, *m.*
object, objeto, *m.*
oblige, obligar.
obliged, be —, deber.
obtain, obtener.
occupy, ocupar.
o'clock, at ten —, a las diez.
October, octubre, *m.*
of, de (*with* pensar) en.
offend, delinquir, ofender.
offer, ofrecer; *noun,* oferta, *f.*
office, despacho, *m.*
often, muchas veces, a menudo.
old, viejo, –a; anciano, –a; **older** (*of persons*) mayor; **be ten years** —, tener diez años.
on, en; (*on top of*) sobre, encima de; — **time,** a tiempo.
once, una vez; **at** —, en seguida, al momento, al instante.
one, un(o), –a; **oneself,** se, sí.
only, sólo, solamente, no . . . más que, no . . . sino.
open, abrir.
opposite, contrario, *m.*
or, o, (*before* o– *or* ho–) u.
orange, naranja, *f.*
order, encargar, ordenar, mandar; **in** — **to,** para; **in** —, que, para que.
order, orden, *f.*
other, otro, –a.
ought, deber.
our, nuestro, –a.
ours, nuestro (–a, –o, –os, –as); el (la, lo, los, las), nuestro (–a, –o, –os, –as).
out, fuera; **go** —, salir.
over (*upon*), sobre; (*above*) encima de.
owe, deber.
own, propio, –a, mismo, –a.

P

package, paquete, *m.*
page, página, *f.*
pain, dolor, *m.* pena, *f.*; **feel** —, [doler.
pair, par, *m.*
palace, palacio, *m.*
pale, pálido, –a.
paper, papel, *m.*; (*newspaper*) periódico, *m.*
pardon, perdonar.
parents, padres, *m. pl.*
parlor, salón, *m.*; sala, *f.*
part, parte, *f.*
partner, socio, *m.*
pass, pasar.
passenger, viajero, –a, *m. and f.*
passion, pasión, *f.*
past, pasado, –a.
patriot, patriota, *m.*
Paul, Pablo, *m.*
pause, pausa, *f.*
pay, pagar; — **attention to,** hacer caso de.
peace, paz, *f.*
pear, pera, *f.*
pen, pluma, *f.*
pencil, lápiz, *m.*
penknife, cortaplumas, *m.*
people, pueblo, *m.*; (*of persons*) gente, *f.*
perhaps, quizá, tal vez, puede ser (que).
perish, perecer.
permit, permitir, dejar.
person, persona, *f.*

peseta, peseta, *f.*
Peter, Pedro, *m.*
piano, piano, *m.*
pick, recoger; — **up,** recoger.
picture, cuadro, *m.*
piece (*of music, etc.*), pieza, *f.*
pipe, pipa, *f.*
pity, lástima, *f.*; compasión, *f.*
place, poner, colocar; *noun,* sitio, *m.*; lugar, *m.*
play, jugar, (*on a musical instrument*) tocar, tañer.
pleasant, amable.
please (*be kind enough to*), ¡hágame Vd. el favor de, tenga Vd. la bondad de, sírvase V.! **to** —,
pleasure, gusto, *m.* [gustar.
pocket, bolsillo, *m.*
point, punto, *m.*
policeman, guardia, guardián, *m.*
polite, cortés, atento, –a.
poor, pobre.
porter, portero, *m.*
position, situación, *f.*
possible, posible; **as soon as** —, lo más pronto posible, cuanto antes.
postal, postal.
postman, cartero, *m.*
post office, correo, *m.*; casa de correos, *f.*
pound, libra, *f.*
pour, echar; — **out,** echar.
pray, rezar.
precious, precioso, –a.
prefer, preferir.
prepare, prepararse.
prevent, impedir.
presence, presencia, *f.*
present, presentar.
present, regalo, *m.*
president, presidente, *m.*
press, apretar.
pretty, bonito, –a, lindo, –a.
price, precio, *m.*
priest, cura, *m.*
prince, príncipe, *m.*
prison, cárcel, *f.*
prize, premio, *m.*; recompensa, *f.*
probable, probable.
probably, probablemente.
produce, producir.
professor, profesor, *m.*
prohibition, prohibición, *f.*
promise, prometer.
property, finca, *f.*
propose, proponer.
protect, guardar.
Protestant, protestante.
provided, — **that,** con tal que.
prudent, prudente.
public, público, –a.
publish, publicar.
pull, tirar.
punish, castigar.
pupil, discípulo, –a, *m. and f.*
pure, puro, –a.
purse, bolsa, *f.*
pursue, proseguir.
put, poner, colocar; — **aboard,** embarcar; — **on** (*clothing*), ponerse.

Q

quarrel, reñir.
quarter, cuarto, *m.*
queen, reina, *f.*
quickly, pronto.
quiet, tranquilo, –a.
quite, bastante.
quote, citar.

R

railroad, ferrocarril, *m.*
rain, llover; *noun,* lluvia, *f.*
raise, levantar.
rapidly, rápidamente.
rather, bastante; — **than,** antes [de, antes que.
reach, llegar a.
read, leer.
ready, listo, –a.
real, verdadero, –a.
realize, conocer, darse cuenta.
really, realmente.
reason, razón, *f.*; motivo, *m.*
receive, recibir.
recently, recién.
recognize, reconocer.
recount, contar.
red, colorado, –a; rojo, –a.
regret, sentir.
relate, referir.
relative, pariente, *m.*
remain, quedar, quedarse.

remember, recordar, acordarse(de).
rent, alquilar; **for —**, se alquila.
repeat, repetir.
repent, arrepentirse.
reply, contestar, responder; *noun*, respuesta, *f.*
rest, descansar.
return (*come back*), volver; (*give back*) devolver.
rich, rico, –a.
right, justo, –a; (*as compared to left*) derecho, –a; **to the —**, a la derecha; **be —**, tener razón.
ring (*the doorbell*), llamar a la puerta.
riot, motín, *m.*
ripe, maduro, –a.
rise, levantarse; **— early**, madrugar.
river, río, *m.*
road, camino, *m.*
roam, errar.
robber, ladrón, *m.*
room, cuarto, *m.*; habitación, *f.*; pieza, *f.*; **bed —**, alcoba, *f.*; **dining —**, comedor, *m.*
roomy, espacioso, –a.
rose, rosa, *f.*
round, redondo, –a.

S

sack, saco, *m.*
sad, triste.
safe, seguro, –a.
saint, santo, –a, *m. and f.*
sale, be for —, venderse.
salon, salón, *m.*
salute, saludar.
same, mismo, –a.
satisfy, satisfacer.
Saturday, sábado, *m.*
save, salvar.
say, decir.
scarcely, apenas.
school, escuela, *f.*
scream, grito, *m.*
season, estación, *f.*
seat, asiento, *m.*; **— oneself**, sentarse.
second, segundo, –a.
secret, secreto, *m.*
see, ver.
seek, buscar.
seem, parecer.
seize, asir.
select, escoger.
self, mismo, –a.
sell, vender.
send, enviar, mandar; **— for**, mandar a buscar.
separate, separar.
September, septiembre, *m.*
servant, criado, *m. and f.*
serve, servir.
service, servicio, *m.*
set, poner, colocar.
seven, siete.
seventh, séptimo.
several, varios, –as; unos, –as; algunos, –as.
severe, severo, –a.
severely, severamente.
shade, sombra, *f.*
shame, vergüenza, *f.*
share, participar.
shave, afeitar; *intr.* afeitarse.
she, ella.
ship, buque, *m.*
shirt, camisa, *f.*
shiver, temblar.
shoe, zapato, *m.*
shop, tienda, *f.*
short, corto, –a; breve.
should (*ought to*), deber.
shoulder, hombro, *m.*
show, enseñar, mostrar, manifestar, indicar, marcar.
sick, enfermo, –a; malo, –a.
sickly, enfermizo, –a.
side, lado, *m.*
sign, firmar.
silent, be —, callarse.
silk, seda, *f.*
silver, plata, *f.*
similar, semejante.
since, desde; *conj.* desde que.
sing, cantar.
sir, señor, *m.* caballero, *m.*
sister, hermana, *f.*
situation, situación, *f.*
six, seis.
sleep, dormir, *noun*, sueño, *m.*; **go to —**, dormirse; **sleepy, be —**, tener sueño.
slow, to be — in . . ., tardar en . . .
slowly, despacio.

small, pequeño, –a; **smaller,** menor; **smallest,** el menor.
smell, oler.
smoke, — tobacco, fumar tobaco.
snow, nevar; *noun,* nieve, *f.*
so, is it not —? ¿no es verdad?
so, tan; (*thus*) así; (**it**) lo; — **much (many)** tanto, –a, –os, –as; — **. . . as,** tan . . . como.
soap, jabón, *m.*
sofa, sofá, *m.*
soil, terreno, *m.*
soldier, soldado, *m.*
solitary, solo, –a.
some, algún(o), –a; *pl.* algunos, –as, unos, –as, unos (–as) cuantos (–as).
somebody, someone, alguien, alguno, –a.
something, algo.
somewhat, algo.
son, hijo, *m.*
song, canción, *f.*
soon, pronto.
sorrow, tristeza, *f.*; pena, *f.*
sorry, be —, sentir.
soul, alma, *f.*
sound, rumor, *m.*
soup, sopa, *f.*
soup spoon, cuchara para sopa, *f.*
spacious, espacioso, –a.
Spain, España, *f.*
Spaniard, Español, –ola, *m. and f.*
Spanish, español, –ola; (*the Spanish language*) el español, *m.*; el castellano, *m.*
speak, hablar.
spend, (*of money*) gastar, (*of time*) pasar.
spill, verter.
spite, in — of, a pesar de.
spoon, cuchara, *f.*
spoonful, cucharada, *f.*
spring, primavera, *f.*
square, cuadrado, –a.
stairs, escalera, *f.*
standing, de (en) pie.
start, salir, partir.
startle, espantar.
state, estado, *m.*
station, estación, *f.*
stay, quedarse.
steel, acero, *m.*
still, todavía, aun; **be —,** callarse.
stone, piedra, *f.*
stop, parar, pararse.
store, tienda, *f.*
storm, tempestad, *f.*
story, historia, *f.*; cuento, *m.*; (*of a house*), piso, *m.*
strange, extraño, –a; raro, –a.
stranger, extranjero, –a, *m. and f.*
street, calle, *f.*
street car, tranvía, *m.*
strike (*of a clock*), dar.
strong, fuerte.
study, estudiar; *noun,* estudio, *m.*; (*room*) gabinete, *m.*
style, modo, *m.*; tono, *m.*
succeed, acertar, conseguir.
such, tal, semejante.
suddenly, de pronto.
suffer, sufrir.
sugar, azúcar, *m. and f.*
suit, traje, *m.*
suited, — to, apto, –a.
summer, verano, *m.*
sun, sol, *m.*
Sunday, domingo, *m.*
surpass, superar.
surprise, sorprender; *noun,* sorpresa, *f.*
sustain, sostenir.
swear, jurar.
sweet, dulce.
sweetly, dulcemente.

T

table, mesa, *f.*
tailor, sastre, *m.*
take, tomar; (*carry*) llevar; (*take out*) sacar; — **off,** quitarse; — **care,** tener cuidado.
talk, hablar.
talkative, hablador, –ora.
tall, alto, –a.
taste, probar; *noun,* gusto, *m.*
tea, te, *m.*
teach, enseñar.
teacher, maestro, –a, *m. and f.*
tear, lágrima, *f.*
teaspoonful, cucharadita, *f.*
telegram, telegrama, *m.*

tell, contar, referir.
temperature, temperatura, *f.*
ten, diez.
tenth, décimo.
terrible, terrible.
text, texto, *m.*
textbook, libro de texto, *m.*
than, que; (*before numerals*) de; (*before dependent clauses*) de lo que, del que, de la que, *etc.*
thank, dar (las) gracias (a); agradecer; **I — you,** ¡gracias!
that (*rel.*), que; (*dem.*) ese, –a, –o, aquel, –la, –lo; (*conj.*) que; **in order —,** para que.
that one, aquél, –la.
the, el, la, los, las, lo; **to —,** al; **of —,** del.
theatre, teatro, *m.*
thee, tí.
their, su, sus; el (la, lo, los, las) . . . de ellos (ellas).
them, los, las, les; ellos, ellas.
then, entonces; (*therefore*) pues.
there, allí, allá; (*near the person addressed*) ahí; **over —,** por allí; **— is (are),** hay.
therefore, pues.
they, ellos, ellas.
thick, grueso, –a.
thief, ladrón, *m.*
tighten, apretar, estrechar.
thine, tuyo.
thing, cosa, *f.*
think, pensar; (*believe*) creer.
third, tercero, –a.
thirst, sed, *f.*
thirsty, be —, tener sed.
thirteen, trece.
thirty, treinta.
this (*dem.*), este, –a, –o, –os, as; **— one,** éste, ésta, *etc.*
those who, los (las) que.
thou, tú.
thousand, mil.
threaten, amenazar.
three, tres.
through, por.
throw, tirar.
thunder, tronar.
Thursday, jueves, *m.*
thus, así.
thy, tu.
time, tiempo, *m.*; vez, *f.*; hora, *f.*; **what — is it?** ¿qué hora es? **the first —,** la primera vez; **on —,** a tiempo; **at that —,** entonces; **a short —,** un rato.
tired, cansado, –a.
tiresome, cansado, –a.
to, a, hasta; **in order —,** para.
tobacco, tobaco, *m.*
to-day, hoy.
to-morrow, mañana; **day after —,** pasado mañana; **— morning,** mañana por la mañana.
tone, tono, *m.*
to-night, esta noche.
too, también; **— much,** demasiado, –a.
touch, tocar.
toward, hacia.
towel, toalla, *f.*
tower, torre, *f.*
town, pueblo, *m.*
trade, oficio, *m.*
train, tren, *m.*
transfer, transladar.
translate, traducir.
travel, viajar.
traveler, viajero, –a, ***m. and f.***
treat, tratar.
tree, árbol, *m.*
tremble, temblar.
trouble, molestar.
true, verdadero, –a; **it is —,** es verdad.
truly, verdaderamente, realmente.
trunk, baúl, *m.*
trust, fiarse.
truth, verdad, *f.*
try, probar, tratar.
Tuesday, martes, *m.*
turn, volver, ponerse.
twelve, doce.
twenty, veinte.
twenty-four, veinte y cuatro.
two, dos.

U

ugly, feo, –a.
umbrella, paraguas, *m.*
uncle, tío, *m.*
under, debajo de; bajo.

understand, comprender, entender.
undertaking, empresa, *f.*
unhappy, infeliz.
United States, Estados Unidos, *m.*
unless, a menos que, a no ser que.
unpleasant, desagradable.
until, hasta; *conj.* hasta que.
up, arriba.
upon, sobre.
us, nosotros, **nos.**
use, emplear.
useful, útil.
useless, inútil.

V

Valencia, Valencia.
various, vario, –a.
vary, variar.
very, muy, mucho, mismo.
vexed, become —, enfadarse, enojarse.
village, pueblo, *m.*
visit, visitar.
voice, voz, *f.*
volume, tomo, *m.*

W

wait, esperar, aguardar.
waiter, mozo, *m.*
walk, andar; *noun,* paseo, *m.*; **go walking,** pasearse.
want, querer, desear.
war, guerra, *f.*
warm, be — (*of persons*), tener calor; (*of weather*) hacer calor; **— water,** agua caliente.
wash, lavar.
waste, malgastar.
watch, reloj, *m.*
water, agua, *f.*
way, manera, *f.*; modo, *m.*; **this —,** por aquí.
we, nosotros, –as.
weather, tiempo, *m.*; **be good —,** hacer buen tiempo.
week, semana, *f.*; **in a —,** en ocho días; **in two —s,** en quince días.
weep, llorar.
well, bueno, –a, bien de salud; *adv.* **bien, pues.**
well, pozo, *m.*
what, (*rel. pron.*) lo que; *interrog.* ¿qué? (*which*) cual; *exclam.* ¡que! **—ever,** lo que.
wheat, trigo, *m.*
wheel, rueda, *f.*
when, cuando; ¿cuándo? **—ever,** [siempre que.
where, donde; *interrog.* dónde.
whether, si, que.
which, que, el (la, lo), cual, el (la, lo) que; *interrog.* cuál; **of —,** cuyo, –a.
whichever, cualquier (a).
while, mientras, mientras que.
whisper, decir al oído.
white, blanco, –a.
who, que, el (la) que, el (la) cual, quien; *interrog.* quién.
whoever, cualquier (o), –a, quienquier (a).
whom (*rel.*), que, quien, el que, *etc.*, el cual, *etc.*; *interrog.* quién.
whose, cuyo, –a; *interrog.* de quién, cúyo, **–a.**
why, porqué.
wide, ancho, –a.
wife, mujer, *f.*; señora, *f.*; esposa, *f.*
wind, viento, *m.*
window, ventana, *f.*
wine, vino, *m.*
winter, invierno, *m.*
wipe, enjugar.
wise, sabio, –a.
wish, desear, querer.
wish, deseo, *m.*
with, con.
within, dentro, dentro de.
without, sin, sin que.
woman, mujer, *f.*; **young —,** joven.
wood, madera, *f.*; leña, *f.*
word, palabra, *f.*
work, trabajar; trabajo, *m.*
workman, trabajador, *m.*
world, mundo, *m.*
worse, peor.
worst, el peor.
worth, be —, valer.
wound, herir; **—ed,** herido, **–a.**
write, escribir.
writer, escritor, *m.*

Y

yard, yarda, *f.*
year, año, *m.*; **next —,** el año que viene.
yes, sí.
yesterday, ayer; **the day before —,** antes de ayer, anteayer.
yet, todavía, aun (*or* aún).
yield, ceder.
you, usted (V., Vd.), *pl.* ustedes (VV., Vds.); le, la, los, las; tu, tí, vosotros, –as, te, os, vos.
young, joven; **a youth,** joven, *m.*; **— woman,** joven, *f.*
younger, menor.
youngest, el menor.
your, su, tu, vuestro, –a, suyo, –a, el (la, los, las) de Vd.; el tuyo, *etc.*, el vuestro, *etc.*, el suyo, *etc.*
yourself, sí, se.

Z

zero, cero.

INDEX

The references are to paragraphs, sections, notes, Introduction, or Appendix.

a: contracts with **el**, 8; with verbs of motion, 26(*a*); with personal objects, 42; omission of, 42(2); with infin., 133(*b*).
absolute superlative, 34.
acá, 64.
accent, Introd. on interrog., 109 note.
address, pron. of, 46.
adjectives: agreement, 15, 25; appocopation, 17; feminine of, 15; plural of, 16; position, 24; comparison 32; irregular comparison, 33; absolute superlative, 34; as nouns, 18.
adverbs, in **–mente**, 31; two adv. in **–mente**, 31(1); comparison, 41; irregular comparison, 41(*a*); superlative, 43(*b*); of place, 64.
age, how expressed, 117.
'ago,' 72.
ahí, 64.
al, contraction of **a el**, 8; with infin., 134.
algo, 123.
alguno, 124.
allí, 64.
alphabet, Introd.
andar, 138, Note; as auxiliary, 136(*b*).
aquí, 64.
articles, see definite article and indefinite article.
augmentatives, App.

bien, comparison, 41(*a*).
'both,' 115 (*f*).
bueno, apocopation, 17; position, 24(3); comparison, 33.
'but,' 62.

cada, 130.
capitalization, Introd.
cardinal numerals, 115.
ciento, 115(*b*).
comparison: adj. 32, 33; adv. 41; of equality, 36.
con, with infin., 133(*d*); with **mí** and **ti**, 50(1); with **si**, 74.
conditional: tense endings, 20; use, 20(1); idiomatic use, 21; subjunctive, 39, (*a*).
conditional sentences, 40; contrary to fact, 40(1); less vivid future, 40(2).
conjugation, 3; of regular verbs, 54, 55.
conmigo, 50(1).
conocer, 151(*a*).
consigo, 74.
consonants, pronunciation, Introd.
contigo, 50(1).
contraction, of definite art. with **a** and **de**, 8.

d, final lost in impv., 75(1).
Date, how expressed, 121.
days of the week, 120.
de contracts with **el**, 8; denoting possessive, 9; meaning 'than', 35(*a*), (*b*); denoting agent, 78(1) with infin., 133(*a*).
definite article: forms, 5; masc. used for fem., 5(*a*); contraction of, 8; use, 37; neuter, 43; as dem. pron., 92; as possess. adj., 84.
demonstratives, 90–92.
diminutives, App.
diphthongs, Introd.
dissyllabic vowel compounds, Introd.

e for **y**, Vocab. XII.
el for **la**, 5(*a*).
ello, 47.
en, with infin., 133(*c*).
estar, conj., 65; use, 66.

future: tense endings, 19; idiomatic use, 21; expressed by **ir**, 26(*a*); subj., 39(*b*), 108.

gender, nouns, 1; adj., 15.
gerund, 136.
gran(de), 17(1); meaning before and after nouns, 24(5).

h, added before **ue**, Introd.
haber: conjug., 67; as auxiliary, 68; impers. use, 69(1); **haber de**, with infin., 69(3).
hacer, conjug., 71; idiomatic uses, 72.
hay, 69(1); **hay que** with infin., 69(2).
hé, 69(4).

imperative: endings, 28; not used in neg. commands, 29; loses final **d**, 75(1).
imperfect: tense endings, 13; use, 13(1); subjunctive, 39(*a*).
indefinite article, forms, 2; omission of, 38.
indefinite pronouns: Lesson XXXII.
infinitive: endings, 3; use, Lesson XXXIII.
interrogative pronouns, Lesson XXX.
interrogative sentences, 11.
ir, 145; expressing future, 26(*a*).
'it', 47.

jamás, 58.

lo, neuter art., 43; neuter pron. 47(1).

malo: apocopation, 17; position, 24(3); comparison, 33.
mas, 62.
más, in comparison, 32; **no . . . más que,** 35 Note.
medio, 115(*e*).
-mente, 31.
mismo, 131.
mitad, 115(*e*).
months, 119.

nada, 60, 125.
'neither . . . nor', 23, 59.
negation, 10, 22, 23, 57–61.
neuter article, 43.
neuter pronouns: person., 47; dem., 91(2); rel., 100.
ni, 22, 59.
ninguno, 60, 126.
no, 57; **no . . . ya,** 63.
¿no es verdad? Note 2, page 11.
nouns: gender, 1; number, 6; special meaning in plur., 7.
numerals, cardinals, 115; ordinals, 118.
nunca, 58.

otro, 128.

para, 80; with infin., 135.
participle, irregular forms, 55 Notes 1 and 2; in perfect tenses, 68; agreement, 137; absolute construction, 137(1).
passive voice, 78; agent after, 78(1); substitutes for, 79.
pequeño, position, 24(3); comparison, 33.
perfect tenses, 68.
pero, 62.
personal **a,** 42.
personal pronouns, Lessons XIII and XIV; forms, 45, 50; position of obj. pron., 49; relative position of two pron. obj., 51; expletive construction, 53; **se** for **le** or **les,** 52· **tú** and **usted,** 46; neuter, 49.
por, 80; with adv. of place, 64(1); with infin., 135.
position of adjectives, 24.
possession, expressed by **de,** 9.
possessive adjectives and pronouns, Lesson XXIII.
present, tense endings, 4; preterite, tense endings, 14; use, 14(1).
primero, apocopation, 17.
pronouns, see under personal possessive, demonstrative interrogative and relative pronouns.
punctuation, Introd.

que, introducing commands, 30(1); rel. pron., 97.
qué, interrog. pron., 110; in exclam., 110(*a*).
quien, rel. pron., 98.
quién, interrog. pron., 111.

radical changing verbs, see stem varying verbs.
recién, 137(3).
reflexive verbs, Lesson XXI; substitute for passive, 79.
reflexive pronouns, 74; position 75; indirect obj., 77;
relative pronouns, Lesson XXVII.

saber, 151(*a*).
san(to), 17(1), Note.
se, reflex. pron., 74; for **le** or **les,** 52.
ser: conjug., 65; **ser** and **estar,** 66; as auxiliary, 78.
sino, 62; **no . . . sino,** 62 Note.
subjunctive: forms, 27, 39; independent, 30; substitute for impv., 29; in condit. sentences, 40; dependent, Lessons XXVIII and XXIX; with verbs, 104; in rel. clauses, 106; sequence of tenses, 105; in adv. clauses, 107; future, 108.
syllabification, Introd.

tal, 129.
tampoco, 61.
tener, conjug., 70; as auxiliary, 70(*a*); idiomatic uses, 70(1).
tercero, apocopation, 17.
tenses, see names of various tenses.
'than,' 35.
'the more (less) . . . the more (less),' 36(1).
'the former . . . the latter,' 91(1).
time of day, how expressed, 116.
todo, 127.
triphthongs, Introd.
tú, 46.

uno, 115(*a*).
unos, 2(*c*).
usted, 46; expletive construction, 53(2).

verbs: regular, 54, 55; principal parts, 55; irregular past participles, 55 Notes 1 and 2; perfect tenses, 68; orthographical changes, Lesson XVI; passive voice, 78, 79; stem-varying, 88, 89, 93, 94, 95; reflexive, Lesson XXI; irregular, 138–157.
volver, a with infin., Vocab. XXIV.
vowels, Introd.

ya, no . . . ya, 63.

the subj: the imperfect subj, or
present in the if clause and
the conditional indicative in the
result clause

The Conditional subj. may be
substituted for either or both.

4) 211052